

**Conjugates of Hydroxyalkyl Starch and a Protein,
Prepared by Reductive Amination**

5

The present invention relates to conjugates of hydroxyalkyl starch, preferably hydroxyethyl starch, and a protein, wherein these conjugates are formed by a reductive amination reaction between at least one aldehyde group of the hydroxyalkyl starch or of a derivative of the hydroxyalkyl starch, and at least one amino group of the protein, so that the hydroxyalkyl starch or the derivative thereof is covalently linked to the protein via an azomethine linkage or a aminomethylene linkage. The present invention also relates to the method of producing these conjugates and specific uses of the conjugates.

10

15

It is generally accepted that the stability of proteins can be improved and the immune response against these proteins is reduced when these proteins are coupled to polymeric molecules. WO 94/28024 discloses that physiologically active proteins modified with polyethylene glycol (PEG) exhibit reduced immunogenicity and antigenicity and circulate in the bloodstream considerably longer than non-conjugated proteins, i.e. have a longer plasma half-life.

20

WO 03/074087 relates to a method of coupling proteins to a starch-derived modified polysaccharide. The binding action between the protein and the polysaccharide, hydroxyalkyl starch, is a covalent linkage which is formed between the terminal aldehyde group or a functional group resulting from chemical modification of said terminal aldehyde group of the hydroxy alkyl starch molecule, and a functional group of the protein. As reactive group of the protein, amino groups, thio groups and carboxyl groups are disclosed. Moreover, while a vast variety of possibilities of different linkages is given in the form of many lists, including different functional groups, theoretically suitable different linker molecules, and different chemical procedures, the working examples describe only two alternatives: first, an oxidized hydroxyethyl starch is used and coupled directly to proteins using ethyldimethylaminopropyl carbodiimide (EDC) activation, or a non-oxidized hydroxyethyl starch is used and coupled directly, i.e. without linking compound to a protein forming a Schiff's base which is subsequently reduced to the respective amine.

25

30

Thus, the working examples of WO 03/074087 do not disclose a single conjugate comprising hydroxyethyl starch, the protein, and one or more linker molecules. Additionally, as far as the conjugates formed by reductive amination are concerned, WO 03/074087 does not contain any information as to a preferred amino group of the protein
5 the reductive amination is carried out with.

Therefore, it was an object of the present invention to provide novel conjugates of hydroxyalkyl starch, preferably hydroxyethyl starch, and a protein which conjugates have beneficial therapeutic effects when administered to a subject in need thereof.

10

It was a further object of the present invention to provide novel conjugates of hydroxyalkyl starch, preferably hydroxyethyl starch, and a protein which are formed by reductive amination by reacting an amino group of the oligopeptide or the polypeptide with an aldehyde or a keto group or a hemiacetal group of hydroxyalkyl starch, preferably
15 hydroxyethyl starch, or with an aldehyde functionalized derivative thereof.

It was yet another object of the present invention to provide a method for producing said novel conjugates wherein said method is applied using specific and selected reaction conditions.

20

Therefore, the present invention relates to a method for preparing a conjugate comprising a protein and a polymer or a polymer derivative, wherein the polymer is a hydroxyalkyl starch, said method comprising covalently linking at least one aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group of the polymer or the polymer derivative to at least one amino
25 group of the protein by reductive amination, said method further comprising either introducing at least two aldehyde groups in the polymer by a ring-opening oxidation reaction and reacting at least one of said aldehyde groups of the polymer with an amino group of the protein, or reacting the polymer with an at least bifunctional compound, said compound comprising two functional groups M and Q, one functional group M being
30 reacted with the polymer and one functional group Q being chemically modified to give an aldehyde or keto or hemiacetal functionalized polymer derivative which is reacted with an amino group of the protein by reductive amination.

Accordingly, the present invention also relates to a conjugate comprising a protein and a polymer or a polymer derivative, wherein the polymer is a hydroxyalkyl starch, obtainable by a method for preparing a conjugate, said method comprising covalently linking at least one aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group of the polymer or the polymer derivative to at least one amino group of the protein by reductive amination, said method further comprising either introducing at least two aldehyde groups in the polymer by a ring-opening oxidation reaction and reacting at least one of said aldehyde groups of the polymer with an amino group of the protein, or reacting the polymer with an at least bifunctional compound, said compound comprising two functional groups M and Q, one functional group M being reacted with the polymer and one functional group Q being chemically modified to give an aldehyde or keto or hemiacetal functionalized polymer derivative which is reacted with an amino group of the protein by reductive amination.

The term "protein" as used in the context of the present invention, relates to any amino acid sequence having at least 2, preferably at least 5, more preferably at least 10 more preferably at least 15, more preferably at least 20, more preferably at least 25, more preferably at least 30, more preferably at least 35, more preferably at least 40, more preferably at least 45, more preferably at least 50 and still more preferably at least 100 amino acids.

The protein can be produced by chemical synthetic procedures or can be of any human or another mammalian source and can be obtained by purification from naturally occurring sources.

According to the present invention, the protein can be a growth factor, a cytokine, an activator, an inhibitor, an enzyme, an antibody, an antigen, a transport protein, a bioadhesion protein, a hormone, a receptor, a suppressor, or a functional derivative or fragment thereof. The term "functional derivative or fragment" as used in the context of the present invention relates to a derivative or fragment that maintains the desired biological property or activity of the original molecule totally or partially, e.g. at least 10 %, more preferably at least 20 %, more preferably at least 30 %, more preferably at least 40 %, more preferably at least 50 %, more preferably at least 60 %, more preferably at least 70 %, more preferably at least 80 % and especially preferably at least 90 % of the

desired biological property or activity of the original molecule. Particularly preferred examples of such fragments are, e.g., antibody fragments.

Examples of proteins are erythropoietin (EPO) such as recombinant human EPO (rhEPO), colony-stimulating factors (CSF), such as G-CSF like recombinant human G-CSF (rhG-CSF), alpha-Interferon (IFN alpha), beta-Interferon (IFN beta) or gamma-Interferon (IFN gamma), such as IFN alpha and IFN beta like recombinant human IFN alpha or IFN beta (rhIFN alpha or rhIFN beta), interleukines, e.g. IL-1 to IL-18 such as IL-2 or IL-3 like recombinant human IL-2 or IL-3 (rhIL-2 or rhIL-3), serum proteins such as coagulation factors II-XIII like factors VII, VIII, IX, alpha1-antitrypsin (A1AT), activated protein C (APC), plasminogen activators such as tissue-type plasminogen activator (tPA), such as human tissue plasminogen activator (hTPA), AT III such as recombinant human AT III (rhAT III), myoglobin, albumin such as bovine serum albumin (BSA), growth factors, such as epidermal growth factor (EGF), thrombocyte growth factor (PDGF), fibroblast growth factor (FGF), brain-derived growth factor (BDGF), nerve growth factor (NGF), B-cell growth factor (BCGF), brain-derived neurotrophic growth factor (BDNF), ciliary neurotrophic factor (CNTF), transforming growth factors such as TGF alpha or TGF beta, BMP (bone morphogenic proteins), growth hormones such as human growth hormone, tumor necrosis factors such as TNF alpha or TNF beta, somatostatine, somatotropine, somatomedines, hemoglobin, hormones or prohormones such as insulin, gonadotropin, melanocyte-stimulating hormone (alpha-MSH), triptorelin, hypthalamic hormones such as antidiuretic hormones (ADH and oxytocin as well as releasing hormones and release-inhibiting hormones, parathyroid hormone, thyroid hormones such as thyroxine, thyrotropin, thyroliberin, prolactin, calcitonin, glucagon, glucagon-like peptides (GLP-1, GLP-2 etc.), exendines such as exendin-4, leptin, vasopressin, gastrin, secretin, integrins, glycoprotein hormones (e.g. LH, FSH etc.), melanoside-stimulating hormones, lipoproteins and apo-lipoproteins such as apo-B, apo-E, apo-L_a, immunoglobulins such as IgG, IgE, IgM, IgA, IgD and fragments thereof, hirudin, tissue-pathway inhibitor, plant proteins such as lectin or ricin, bee-venom, snake-venom, immunotoxins, antigen E, alpha-proteinase inhibitor, ragweed allergen, melanin, oligolysine proteins, RGD proteins or optionally corresponding receptors for one of these proteins; or a functional derivative or fragment of any of these proteins or receptors.

Preferred enzymes are, e.g., carbohydrate-specific enzymes, proteolytic enzymes, oxidases, oxidoreductases, transferases, hydrolases, lyases, isomerases, kinases and ligases. Specific non-limiting examples are asparaginase, arginase, arginin deaminase, adenosin deaminase, glutaminase, glutaminase-asparaginase, phenylalanin, tryptophanase, tyrosinase, superoxide dismutase (SOD), endotoxinase, catalase, peroxidase, kallikrein, trypsin, chymotrypsin, elastase, thermolysin, lipase, uricase, adenosine diphosphatase, purine nucleoside phosphorylase, bilirubin oxidase, glucose oxidase, glucodase, gluconate oxidase, galactosidase, glucocerebrosidase, glucuronidase, hyaluronidase, tissue factor, streptokinase, urokinase, MAP-kinases, DNAses, RNAses, lactoferrin and functional derivatives or fragments thereof.

According to preferred embodiments of the present invention, the protein is selected from the group consisting of EPO, G-CSF, IFN alpha, IFN beta, AT III, IL-2, IL-3, myoglobin, SOD, A1AT, and BSA.

According to especially preferred embodiments of the present invention, the protein is selected from the group consisting of rhEPO, rhG-CSF, rhIFN alpha, rhIFN beta, rhAT III, rhIL-2, rhIL-3, myoglobin, SOD, A1AT, and BSA.

Erythropoietin (EPO) is a glycoprotein hormone necessary for the maturation of erythroid progenitor cells into erythrocytes. In human adults, it is produced in the kidney. EPO is essential in regulating the level of red blood cells in the circulation. Conditions marked by low levels of tissue oxygen provoke an increased biosynthesis of EPO, which in turn stimulates erythropoiesis. A loss of kidney function as it is seen in chronic renal failure, for example, typically results in decreased biosynthesis of EPO and a concomitant reduction in red blood cells. Erythropoietin is an acid glycoprotein hormone of approximately 34,000 Da. Human erythropoietin is a 166 amino acid polypeptide that exists naturally as a monomer (Lin et al., 1985, PNAS 82, 7580-7584, EP 148 605 B2, EP 411 678 B2). The identification, cloning and expression of genes encoding erythropoietin are described, e.g., in U.S. Patent 4,703,008. The purification of recombinant erythropoietin from cell culture medium that supported the growth of mammalian cells containing recombinant erythropoietin plasmids, for example, is described in U.S. Patent 4,667,016. It is generally believed in this technical field that the biological activity of EPO in vivo mainly depends on the degree of sialic acids bound to EPO (see e.g. EP 428 267 B1). Theoretically, 14

molecules of sialic acid can be bound to one molecule EPO at the terminal ends of the carbohydrate side chains linked to N- and O-glycosylation sites. Highly sophisticated purification steps are necessary to obtain highly sialylated EPO preparations. For further detailed information on erythropoietin see Krantz, Erythropoietin, 1991, Blood, 77(3):419-34 (Review) and Cerami, Beyond erythropoiesis: novel applications for recombinant human erythropoietin, 2001, Semin Hematol., (3 Suppl 7):33-9 (Review).

G-CSF is a 21 kDa glycoprotein stabilized by two intrachain disulfide bonds and containing a single O-linked carbohydrate moiety. Mature G-CSF has 174 amino acids. In the animal body, G-CSF is synthesized by bone marrow stromal cells, macrophages and fibroblasts. Its main function is to be a growth and differentiation factor for neutrophils and their precursor cells. However, it is also known in the art that G-CSF activates mature neutrophils. In addition, it stimulates growth/differentiation of various other haemopoietic progenitor cells (in synergy with additional haemopoietic growth factors) and promotes proliferation and migration of endothelial cells. Clinically, G-CSF is administered for the treatment of deficiencies in neutrophil levels (caused, e.g. by aplastic anaemia, myelodysplasia, AIDS, or chemotherapy).

The G-CSF can be produced by chemical synthetic procedures or can be of any human (see e.g. Burgess, A.W. et al. 1977, Stimulation by human placental conditioned medium of hemopoietic colony formation by human marrow cells, Blood 49 (1977), 573-583; Shah, R.G. et al. 1977, Characterization of colony-stimulating activity produced by human monocytes and phytohemagglutinin-stimulated lymphocytes, Blood 50 (1977), 811) or another mammalian source and can be obtained by purification from naturally occurring sources like human placenta, human blood or human urine. In addition, a lot of Epithelial carcinomas, acute myeloid leukemia cells and various tumor cell lines (bladder carcinomas, medulloblastomas), are capable to express this factor.

Furthermore, the expression G-CSF encompasses also a G-CSF variant wherein one or more amino acids (e.g. 1 to 25, preferably 1 to 10, more preferably 1 to 5, most preferred 1 or 2) have been exchanged by another amino acid and which exhibits G-CSF activity (see e.g. Riedhaar-Olson, J.F. et al. 1996, Identification of residues critical to the activity of human granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, Biochemistry 35:9034-9041 1996; U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,581,476; 5,214,132; 5,362,853; 4,904,584). The measurement of G-CSF activity is

described in the art (for measurement of G-CSF activity in vitro see e.g. Shirafuji, N. et al.1989, A new bioassay for human granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (hG-CSF) using murine myeloblastic NFS-60 cells as targets and estimation of its levels in sera from normal healthy persons and patients with infectious and hematological disorders, *Exp. Hematol.* 1989, 17, 116-119; for measurement of G-CSF activity in vivo see e.g. Tanaka, H. et al. 1991, Pharmacokinetics of recombinant human granulocyte colony-stimulating factor conjugated to polyethylene glycol in rats, *Cancer Research* 51, 3710-3714, 1991). Further publications where tests for the measurement of the activity of G-CSF are disclosed are U.S. Pat. No. 6,555,660; Nohynek, G.J. et al.1997, Comparison of the potency of glycosylated and nonglycosylated recombinant human granulocyte colony-stimulating factors in neutropenic and nonneutropenic CD rats, *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* (1997) 39;259-266.

Preferably, the G-CSF is recombinantly produced. This includes prokaryotic or eukaryotic host expression of exogenous DNA sequences obtained by genomic or cDNA cloning or by DNA synthesis. Suitable prokaryotic hosts include various bacteria such as *E. coli*. Suitable eukaryotic hosts include yeast such as *S. cerevisiae* and mammalian cells such as Chinese hamster ovary cells and monkey cells.

The recombinant production of a protein is known in the art. In general, this includes the transfection of host cells with an appropriate expression vector, the cultivation of the host cells under conditions which enable the production of the protein and the purification of the protein from the host cells. For detailed information see e.g. Souza, L.M. et al. 1986, Recombinant human granulocyte colony-stimulating factor: effects on normal and leukemic myeloid cells, *Science* 1986 232:61-65, 1986; Nagata, S. et al. 1986, Molecular cloning and expression of cDNA for human granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, *Nature* 319:415-418, 1986; Komatsu, Y. et al. 1987, Cloning of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor cDNA from human macrophages and its expression in *Escherichia coli*, *Jpn J Cancer Res.* 1987 78(11):1179-1181.

In a preferred embodiment, the G-CSF has the amino acid sequence of human mature G-CSF (see e.g.; Nagata, S. et al.1986, Molecular cloning and expression of cDNA for human granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, *Nature* 319:415-418, 1986), and may further contain a methionin at its amino terminus, which then results in a protein of 175

amino acids. Furthermore, instead of the methionine, G-CSF may contain a serine or a threonine residue.

5 The G-CSF used in the methods of the present invention and the conjugates according to the present invention may comprise one carbohydrate side chain attached to the G-CSF via O-linked glycosylation at the position Thr 133, i.e. the G-CSF is glycosylated (V. Gervais et al., Eur. J. Biochem. 1997, 247, 386-395). The structure of the carbohydrate side chain may be NeuNAc(alpha2-3)Gal(beta1-3)[NeuNAc(alpha2-6)]GalNAc und (alpha2-3)Gal(beta1-3)GalNAc (NeuNAc = N-acetylneuramic acid, GalNAc = N-acetylgalactosamine).

10

Modification of G-CSF and other polypeptides so as to introduce at least one additional carbohydrate chain as compared to the native polypeptide has been suggested (U.S. Pat. No. 5,218,092). Depending on the host employed, the G-CSF expression product may be glycosylated with mammalian or other eukaryotic carbohydrates. Usually, when G-CSF is produced in eukaryotic cells, the protein is posttranslationally glycosylated. Consequently, the carbohydrate side chain may have been attached to the G-CSF during biosynthesis in mammalian, especially human, insect or yeast cells.

15

20 Recombinant human G-CSF (rhG-CSF) is generally used for treating various forms of leukopenia. Thus, commercial preparations of rhG-CSF are available under the names filgrastim (Gran® and Neupogen®), lenograstim (Neutrogin® and Granocyte®) and nartograstim (Neu-up®). Gran® and Neupogen® are non-glycosylated and produced in recombinant E. coli cells. Neutrogin® and Granocyte® are glycosylated and produced in recombinant CHO cells and Neu-up® is non-glycosylated with five amino acids substituted at the N-terminal region of intact rhG-CSF produced in recombinant E. coli cells.

25

Interferons are cytokines that mediate antiviral, anti-proliferative and immuno-modulatory activities in response to viral infection and other biological inducers. In contrast to IFN alpha, IFN beta is highly species-specific. There are two subtypes of IFN beta, IFN beta 1a and IFN beta 1b. When it comes to industrial production then the main difference between IFN beta 1a and IFN beta 1b is the respective cell systems utilized for their production. IFN beta 1a is produced by mammalian cells and receives the designation 1a because its

30

amino acid sequence is identical to that of the naturally occurring interferon beta. IFN beta 1b is produced by bacteria. Interferons, like most other mammalian proteins are modified post-translationally by glycosylation. Bacteria, however, lack the ability to glycosylate proteins and thus IFN beta 1b does not include the carbohydrate side chains found in the natural material. IFN beta 1a has 166 amino acids and a molecular weight of about 22,500 D, IFN beta 1b has 165 amino acids and a molecular weight of about 18,500 Da, because the N-terminal methionin is missing in IFN beta 1b as well as the glycosylation due to the bacterial production method. The amino acid sequence of human interferon beta is given, e.g. in EP 0 218 825 A1. The crystal structure of interferon beta was reported in: *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **94** (1997) pp 11813-11818, Biochemistry, Karpusas M, Nolte M, Benton CB, Meier W, Lipscomb WN, Goelz S. Commercial preparations of interferon beta are Betaseron® (IFN beta 1b), Avonex® and Rebif® (IFN beta 1a). Interferon beta 1b is manufactured by bacterial fermentation of a strain of *E. coli* that bears a genetically engineered plasmid containing the gene for human interferon beta_{ser17}. The native gene was obtained from human fibroblasts and altered in a way that substitutes serine for the cysteine residue found at position 17. Interferon beta 1a is produced by recombinant DNA technology using genetically engineered Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells into which the human interferon beta gene has been introduced. The amino acid sequence of IFN beta 1a is identical to that of natural fibroblast derived human interferon beta. Natural interferon beta and interferon beta 1a are glycosylated with each containing a single N-linked complex carbohydrate moiety at the Asn80. The interferon beta drugs are indicated for the treatment of relapsing remitting multiple sclerosis. However, there are many serious side effects related to the administration of the interferon beta drug products. Furthermore they are administered by injection (intramuscular or subcutaneously), leading to additional risks. Reducing the side effects and easier (e.g. less frequent) administration are the reason, why lot of development work is performed to improve the properties of IFN beta. Polymer modification of proteins is a technique which is applied to improve the properties of the proteins. The mainly used technique is the modification of interferon with polyethylen glycol, known as PEGylation.

30

IFN alpha forms are naturally produced by monocytes/macrophages, lymphoblastoid cells, fibroblasts and a number of different cell types following induction by viruses, nucleic acids, glucocorticoid hormones and other inductors. At least 23 different variants of IFN alpha are known. The individual proteins have molecular masses between 19-26 kD and

consist of proteins with lengths of 156-166 and 172 amino acids. All IFN alpha subtypes possess a common conserved sequence region between amino acid positions 115-151 while the amino-terminal ends are variable. Many IFN alpha subtypes differ in their sequences at only one or two positions. Disulfide bonds are formed between cysteines at positions 1/98 and 29/138. The disulfide bond 29/138 is essential for biological activity while the 1/98 bond can be reduced without affecting biological activity. All IFN alpha forms contain a potential glycosylation site but most subtypes are not glycosylated. In contrast to IFN gamma, IFN alpha proteins are stable at a pH of 2. Industrial production of IFN alpha is performed using genetically modified *E. coli*. Because bacteria lack the ability to glycosylate proteins, the two variants of IFN alpha (IFN alpha 2a, and IFN alpha 2b), which are used in approved drug products, are both non-glycosylated. A major drawback of conventional IFN alpha are the side effects. Lot of work has been done on improvement of interferon alpha drugs, which are indicated for treatment of Hepatitis C. Polymer modification of proteins is a technique which is applied to improve the properties of the proteins. The mainly used technique is the modification of interferon with polyethylen glycol, known as PEGylation. Two commercially available PEGylated variants of IFN-alpha are PEGIntron® (SP) and Pegasys® (Roche).

Antithrombin III (AT III) is a serine protease inhibitor that inhibits thrombin and factor Xa (Travis, Annu. Rev. Biochem. 52: 655, 1983). To a lesser extent, factor IXa, XIa, XIIa, tPA, urokinase, trypsin, plasmin and kallikrein are also inhibited (Menache, Semin. Hematol. 28:1, 1991; Menache, Transfusion 32:580, 1992; Lahiri, Arch. Biochem. Biophys. 175:737, 1976). Human AT III is synthesized in the liver as a single chain glycoprotein of 432 amino acids with a molecular weight (MW) of approximately 58.000 D. Its plasma concentration is within the range of 14-20 mg/dL (Rosenberg, Rev. Hematol. 2:351, 1986; Murano, Thromb. Res. 18:259, 1980). The protein bears three disulfide bridges (Cys 8-128, Cys 21-95, Cys 247-430) and four N-linked carbohydrate chains (Asn 96,-135,-155,-192) which account of 15% of the total mass (Franzen, J. Biol. Chem. 255:5090, 1980; Peterson, The Physiological Inhibitions of Blood Coagulation and Fibrinolysis, Elsevier/ North- Holland Biomedical Press 1979, p 43). Antithrombin is a serine proteinase inhibitor of the serpin type that is of major importance in the control of blood coagulation. AT III is the most abundant endogenous anticoagulant circulating in human plasma. This serine protease inhibitor participates in the regulation of clotting in both physiologic and pathologic states (Opal, Crit. Care Med. 2002, 30:325). It circulates

in two forms with low thrombin inhibitory capacity (Pike, J. Biol. Chem. 272:19562, 1997; Ersdal-Badju, Fed. Proc. 44:404, 1985) (85-95% alpha isoform with 4 biantennary, mono- and di-sialylated oligosaccharide chains, 5-15% is the high heparin affinity beta isoform lacking glycosylation at Asn 135, 2-6 terminal sialic acid linkage). A small fraction of the circulating AT III is normally bound to proteoglycans on the surface of vascular endothelial cells. These proteoglycans are predominantly heparan sulfate, a molecule structurally similar to heparin, which is able to catalyze the inhibition of thrombin in the same way as heparin. The AT III binding to well defined pentasaccharide units of heparin causes a conformational change of the protein (Choay, Ann. NY Acad. Sci. 370:644, 1981; Choay, Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun. 116:492, 1983; Olson, J. Biol. Chem. 266:6353, 1991; Bauer, Semin. Hematol. 28:10, 1991; Carell, Thromb. Haemost. 78:516, 1997). This binding catalyzes a 1000 fold increase of AT III inhibitory activity toward thrombin and Factor Xa (Rosenberg, Fed. Proc. 44:404, 1985; Bjork, Antithrombin and related inhibitors of coagulation proteinases in Barrett, Salvesen (eds.): Proteinase Inhibitors, vol 17, Amsterdam, The Netherlands Elsevier Science Publishers (Biomedical Division) 1986 p 489; Olson, J. Biol. Chem. 267:12528, 1992). This localization of a fraction of the AT III on the endothelial surface, where enzymes of the intrinsic coagulation cascade are commonly generated, enables AT III to rapidly neutralize these hemostatic enzymes and protect natural surfaces against thrombus formation. Thus, the key properties of AT III for prevention of thrombotic events are its ability to bind the catalyst heparin, undergo the conformational change that alters its inhibitory properties, and irreversibly bind thrombin or Factor Xa thereby inhibiting their activities. AT III also has remarkable anti-inflammatory properties, several of which result from its actions in the coagulation cascade (Roemisch, Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis. 2002, 13:657). Activated coagulation proteases like activated factor X and thrombin contribute to inflammation; for instance, by the release of pro-inflammatory mediators. Inhibition of these proteases by AT III prevents their specific interaction with cells and subsequent reactions (Roemisch, Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis 2002, 13:657). Anti-inflammatory properties of AT III independent of coagulation involve direct interactions with cells leading to the release of, for instance, prostacyclin. Binding of AT III to a recently identified cellular receptor, syndecan-4, leads to the interference with the intracellular signal induced by mediators like lipopolysaccharides and, thereby, to a down-modulation of the inflammatory response (Roemisch, Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis 2002, 13:657). Beside the analysis of the free AT III structure many studies have been conducted evaluating the complexation sites for oligosaccharide units of heparin due to the

importance of the heparin AT III complex for the physiological function of AT III (Choay, Ann. NY Acad. Sci. 370:644, 1981; Choay, Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun. 116:492, 1983; Olson, J. Biol. Chem. 266:6353, 1991; Bauer, Semin. Hematol. 28:10, 1991; Carell, Thromb. Haemost. 78:516, 1997). AT III can be produced following classical human plasma fractionating techniques. Affinity chromatography (heparin-sepharose) using the high affinity of heparin as a ligand for AT III followed by heat treatment for virus inactivation is used for the separation from plasma. Beside the fractionation from plasma more recent alternatives are available for the AT III production following recombinant production techniques that provide a safer access to this important therapeutic Protein (Levi, Semin Thromb Hemost 27: 405, 2001). ATrynTM is a recombinant human AT III (rh AT III) produced by GTC Biotherapeutics in transgenic goats. Detailed investigations have been conducted comparing the structural und functional properties of both plasma derived AT III (ph AT III) and rh AT III (Edmunds, Blood, 91:4561, 1998). Based on this experiments rh AT III is structurally identical to ph AT III with the exception of the glycosylation. Oligomannose structures were found on Asn 155 of the transgenically produced material whereas complex structures are detected in the case of the plasma derived protein. Some of the galactose units of the pd AT III are substituted by GalNac units in the rh AT III. A higher degree of fucosylation in rh AT III is another difference. Finally, the sialylation pattern of both proteins differs in two ways: the rh AT III is less sialylated and contains N-acetyl- as well as N-glycolylneuramin acids. This structural difference between the two carbohydrate parts of both molecules also results in different biochemical properties. The following AT III drugs are available on the European hospital market. (Source: IMS-ATC group 2001): Kybernin® (Aventis Behring), AT III (Baxter, Grifols), Atenativ® (Pharmacia), Aclotine® (LFB), Anbin® (Grifols).

Factor VIII participates in the intrinsic blood coagulation cascade of proteinases and serves as a cofactor in the reaction of factor IXa converting factor X to the active form, factor Xa, which ultimately leads to the formation of a fibrin clot. A lack or instability of factor VIII leads to haemophilia A, a common recessive x-linked coagulation disorder. The frequency of haemophilia A is 1-2 in 10,000 male births in all ethnic groups. Patients either do express levels of factor VIII well below normal or belong to the so-called group of crm (cross-reacting material) positive patients (approximately 5% of patients) that have considerable amount of factor VIII in their plasma (at least 30% of normal), but the protein is non-functional. About 50% of all patients have severe haemophilia a with a factor VIII

activity of less than 1% of normal; they have frequent spontaneous bleeding into joints, muscles and internal organs. Mild haemophilia A, which occurs in 30-40% of patients, is associated with an activity of 5-30% of normal. Bleeding occurs only after significant trauma or surgery. Moderately severe haemophilia a occurs in about 10% of patients;

5 Here, factor VIII activity is 2-5% of normal, and bleeding occurs already after minor trauma. The human in-vivo half-life of factor VIII is usually 10-15 hours but it has to be noted that the release, stability, and degradation kinetics are also influenced by another factor, the van Willebrand factor. Factor VIII is either produced by conventional extraction from donated human plasma or, more recently, using recombinant systems. For example,

10 Baby hamster kidney (BHK) cells are used for production of Kogenate® (Bayer), whereas Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells are used for another product, Rekombinate® (Baxter). As the full single-chain protein of 2351 amino acids with a nominal molecular weight of 267 kD (Toole et al., 1984, Nature 312: 342) or in different versions, where the full B-domain or parts of it are deleted in order to have a product that is more stable and

15 gives a higher yield in production (Bhattacharyya et al. 2003, CRIPS 4/3: 2-8). The precursor product is processed into two polypeptide chains of 200 and 80 kD in the Golgi and the two chains which are held together by metal ion(s) are expressed in the blood (Kaufman et al., 1988, J. Biol. Chem., 263: 6352). Procoagulant activity requires further thrombin cleavage to yield 54 kD and 44 kD fragments of the heavy chain plus a 72 kD

20 light-chain fragment (Aly et al., 1992, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA: 4933). In factor VIII concentrates derived from human plasma several fragmented fully active factor VIII forms have thus been described (Anderson et al., 1986, Proc. Natl. Acad, Sci. 83: 2979). A common side effect of the administration of plasmatic or recombinant factor VIII are immunological reactions in quite a high number of patients (up to 30%), that forfeit the

25 therapeutic value. In the past, various attempts to tolerate the patients by oral induction of tolerance were started but results were not all too encouraging. New genetic means of inducing tolerance have been proposed but not yet found widespread application. It is contemplated by the present inventors that a hesylated protein has a lower degree of immunogenicity and could thus reduce this complication. Factor VIII is very rich in lysine

30 residues (over 220 of the overall 2350 amino acids), that could be used for the Reductive Amination approach.

Alpha1- Antitrypsin (A1AT, also referred to as alpha1-proteinase inhibitor) is a proteinase inhibitor that has been shown to inhibit virtually all mammalian serine proteinases (Travis

Ann. Rev. Biochem. **52** (1983) p. 655) including neutrophil elastase, thrombin, factors Xa and XIa. A1AT is a single chain glycoprotein synthesized in the liver with 394 amino acids and a molecular weight of 53 kD. The plasma concentration is within a range of 1-1.3 g/l. The presence of only one cysteine in the whole protein does not allow the formation of intramolecular disulfide bridges. The molecule bears three carbohydrate side chains (Asn 46, 83, 247) (*Mega J. Biol. Chem.* **255** (1980) p. 4057; *Mega J. Biol. Chem.* **255** (1980) p. 4053; Carell *FEBS Letters* **135** (1981) p. 301; Hodges *Biochemistry* **21** (1982) p. 2805) that represent 12 % of the molecular weight. Two types of carbohydrate chains were discovered having a bi- or triantennary structure, respectively (Hodges *J. Biol. Chem.* **254** (1979) p. 8208). Human A1AT occurs in at least twenty different forms in the general population. This micro-heterogenicity is a result of variable amounts of the two types of carbohydrate chains. The key function is the activity control of neutrophil elastase (Travis *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* **52** (1983) p. 655). An uncontrolled activity of elastase leads to an attack on epithelial tissues with the result of irreparable damage. During the inactivation process A1AT acts as a substrate for elastase binding to the active center of the protease which is subsequently inactivated by this complex formation. A deficiency of A1AT causes e.g. pulmonary emphysema which is connected with a damage of the pulmonary epithelium. The distribution of the two types of carbohydrate side chains of A1AT to the three N-glycosylation sites of A1AT is different for each isotype of A1AT. The classical production of A1AT is conducted following plasma fractionation techniques using different affinity-chromatography steps from human plasma. However a more recent way of producing A1AT is the use of recombinant techniques. PPL Therapeutics have developed a process that allows to recover recombinant human A1AT (rHA1AT) from the milk of transgenic sheep (Olman *Biochem. Soc. Symp.* **63** (1998) p. 141; Tebbutt *Curr. Opin. Mol. Ther.* **2** (2000) p. 199; Carver *Cytotechnology* **9** (1992) p. 77; Wright *Biotechnology (NY)* **9** (1991) p. 830). With respect to the protein part of the molecule the rHA1AT shows an identical structure compared to pdA1AT. But - as is the case for other recombinant produced human proteins- differences occur in the carbohydrate side chains, especially with regard to the amount of sialic acid residues.

30

The tissue type plasminogen activator (tPA) is a trypsin like serine protease important in clot lysis. In the presence of a fibrin clot, tPA converts plasminogen to plasmin, which degrades fibrin. TPA exhibits enhanced activity in the presence of fibrin and as a result, causes fibrin-specific plasminogen activation (M. W. Spellman, L.J. Basa, C.K. Leonard,

J.A. Chakel, J.V. O'Connor, *The Journal of Biological Chemistry* **264** (1989) p. 14100). Plasmin solubilizes fibrin, yielding fibrin degradation products. Through a positive feedback mechanism, fibrin enhances its own degradation by stimulating tPA mediated plasminogen activation (R.J. Stewart et.al. *The Journal of Biological Chemistry* **275** (2000) pp. 10112-10120). htPA is a physiological activator of fibrinolysis, which is present in different types of tissues. It is a glycoprotein with a molecular weight of approx. 68 kD. In native form tPA exists in a one-chain-form (single-chain tissue-type plasminogen activator, sctPA), which can be converted by cleavage of plasmin at the peptide bond Arg 275-Ile 276 to a two chain structure (two-chain tissue-type plasminogen activator, tctPA). For therapy of fibrinolysis it is produced recombinant as rtPA (recombinant tissue-type plasminogen activator). Different types of tPA exist showing structural differences in the carbohydrate structure. Type I tPA has N-linked oligosaccharides at amino acids Asn117, Asn184 and Asn448. Type II tPA is glycosylated at Asn117 and Asn448. Both types contain an O-linked fucose residue at Thr61 (K. Mori et.al. *The Journal of Biological Chemistry* **270** (1995) pp. 3261-3267). The carbohydrate structure of tPA expressed in CHO-cells was investigated, showing a large variety of di-, tri- and tetraantennary structures of the sugar chains (M. W. Spellman, L.J. Basa, C.K. Leonard, J.A. Chakel, J.V. O'Connor, *The Journal of Biological Chemistry* **264** (1989) p. 14100). The primary structure of tPA contains several cysteines, that are believed to be cross-linked and in addition a free cysteine residue at site 83, which may interact with another tPA, forming a dimer. Several results indicate that the in-vivo clearance of tPA is influenced by the carbohydrate structure, particularly by the high mannose oligosaccharide attached at site Asn117. Another proposed clearance mechanism involves the recognition of the O-linked fucose residue at Thr61 by a high affinity receptor on hepatocytes. This residue is close to Cys83. A bioengineered tPA (TNK-tPA) was developed to prolong the half-life. The glycosylation site at position 117 was shifted to position 103. Asparagine at site 117 was substituted by Glutamine and Threonine at site 103 substituted by Asparagine. TNK-tPA is resistant to inactivation by plasminogen activator inhibitor 1 because of a tetra-alanine substitution in the protease domain (R.J. Stewart et.al. *The Journal of Biological Chemistry* **275** (2000) pp. 10112-10120). TNK-tpA is on the market as Tenecteplase® (Boehringer Ingelheim). TNK-tPA can be administered as a single intravenous bolus, while tPA has to be administered as a bolus followed by an infusion.

Activated Protein C (APC) is a modulator of the coagulation and inflammation associated with severe sepsis. Activated Protein C is converted from its inactive precursor (protein C) by thrombin coupled to thrombomodulin. This complex cleaves off a short N-terminal activation peptide from the heavy chain of protein C, resulting in the activated protein C.

5 Drotrecogin alpha (activated) is a recombinant human activated protein C (rhAPC). Its amino acid sequence is identical to plasma derived activated protein C and it has similar properties. Activated protein C is marketed by Eli Lilly as Xigris®. It is produced in a human cell line (HEK293), into which the protein C expression vectors are introduced. The cell line was used due to its ability to perform the correct series of complex post-
10 translational modifications that are required for functional activity. Recombinant human activated protein C is a 2-chain glycoprotein containing 4 N-glycosylation sites and 12 disulfide bonds. The heavy chain contains 250 amino acids. In this chain, seven residues are cysteine and three N-linked glycosylation sites (Asn-248, Asn-313 and Asn-329). The seven cysteine residues form three disulfide bonds within the heavy chain and one
15 disulfide bond between the chains. The light chain contains one N-linked glycosylation site (Asn-97) and 17 cysteine residues, which form eight disulfide bonds within the light chain and one disulfide bond between the chains. The first nine glutamic acids on the light chain are gamma carboxylated (Gla) and aspartic acid 71 is beta hydroxylated. rhAPC has an identical amino acid sequence as human plasma-derived activated protein C, but differs
20 from the latter in its glycosylation pattern. Activated protein C is a protease belonging to the serine protease family. It plays a major role in the regulation of coagulation. Basis for the antithrombotic function of activated protein C is its ability to inhibit thrombin function. In addition, activated protein C is an important modulator of inflammation associated with severe sepsis. Endogenous serine protease inhibitors are natural inhibitors for activated
25 protein C, resulting in activated protein C having a very short circulatory activity half-life (less than 30 min) in vivo. Clearance of activated protein C from the circulation is mediated by combination of at least three processes including the inhibition of the enzymatic activity of activated protein C by endogenous protease inhibitors, the clearance of activated protein C and/or activated protein C-serine protease inhibitor complexes by
30 organs such as liver and kidney, and the degradation of activated protein C and/or activated protein C-serine protease inhibitor complexes by circulating or tissue proteases. Phase I clinical studies with 24h-infusion at 24 µg/kg/h resulted in a steady state plasma concentration of 70 ng/ml. The half-life of rhAPC measured at the end of an infusion was 0.5-1.9 h. Plasma rhAPC concentrations fell below the detection limit of 10 ng/ml within

2h after termination of the infusion. Due to its short physiological and pharmacokinetic half-life, in clinical use in sepsis therapy, activated protein C is continuously infused at a certain rate to maintain the desired plasma concentration. Some effort is made to improve the pharmacokinetic profile of activated protein C. For example D.T. Berg et. al. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **100** (2003) pp. 4423-4428, describe an engineered variant of activated protein C with prolonged plasma half-life.

Factor VII participates in the intrinsic blood coagulation cascade of proteinases and promoting hemostasis by activating the extrinsic pathway of the coagulation cascade. F VII is converted to factor VIIa by factor Xa, factor XIIa, factor IXa, or thrombin by minor proteolysis. In the presence of tissue factor and calcium ions, factor VIIa then converts factor X to factor Xa by limited proteolysis. Factor VIIa will also convert factor IX to factor IXa in the presence of tissue factor and calcium. Factor VII is a vitamin K-dependent glycoprotein consisting of 406 amino acid residues (MW 50 K Dalton). Factor VII is either produced by conventional extraction from donated human plasma or, more recently, using recombinant systems. Novo Nordisk uses Baby hamster kidney (BHK) cells for production of NovoSeven®. Expressed as the single-chain protein of 406 amino acids with a nominal molecular weight of 55 kDa (Thim, L. et al., Biochemistry 27:7785-7793(1988). The molecule bears four carbohydrate side chains. Two O-linked carbohydrate side chains at Ser 52, 60 and two N-linked carbohydrate side chains at Asn 145, 322 (Thim, L. et al., Biochemistry 27:7785-7793(1988).

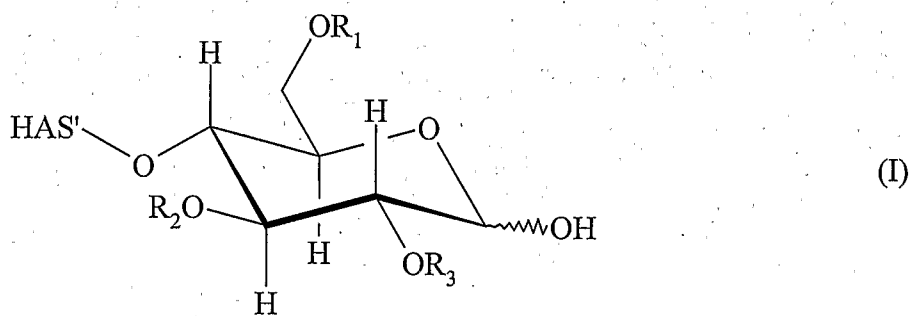
Factor VII is indicated for the treatment of bleeding episodes in hemophilia A or B patients with inhibitors to Factor VIII or Factor IX. Therefore, the present invention also relates to the use of a HAS-Factor VII conjugate for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of episodes in hemophilia A or B patients with inhibitors to Factor VIII or Factor IX.

Factor IX is a vitamin K-dependent plasma protein that participates in the intrinsic pathway of blood coagulation by converting factor X to its active form in the presence of Ca(2+) ions, phospholipids, and factor VIIIa. Factor IX is a glycoprotein with an approximate molecular mass of 55,000 Da consisting of 415 amino acids in a single chain (Yoshitake S. et al., Biochemistry 24:3736-3750(1985)). Factor IX is either produced by conventional extraction from donated human plasma or, more recently, using recombinant

systems. Wyeth uses Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells for production of BeneFIX[®]. It has a primary amino acid sequence that is identical to the Ala¹⁴⁸ allelic form of plasma-derived factor IX, and has structural and functional characteristics similar to those of endogenous factor IX. The protein bears eight carbohydrate side chains. Six O-linked carbohydrate side chains at Ser 53, 61 and at Threonine 159, 169, 172, 179 and two N-linked carbohydrate side chains at Asn 157, 167 (Yoshitake S. et al., Biochemistry 24:3736-3750(1985); Balland A. et al., Eur J Biochem. 1988;172(3):565-72).

Factor IX is indicated for the control and prevention of hemorrhagic episodes in patients with hemophillia B (congenital factor IX deficiency or Christmas disease), including control and prevention of bleeding in surgical settings. Therefore, the present invention also relates to the use of a HAS-Factor IX conjugate for the preparation of a medicament for the control and prevention of hemorrhagic episodes in patients with hemophillia B (e.g. congenital factor IX deficiency or Christmas disease), including control and prevention of bleeding in surgical settings.

In the context of the present invention, the term "hydroxyalkyl starch" (HAS) refers to a starch derivative which has been substituted by at least one hydroxyalkyl group. A preferred hydroxyalkyl starch of the present invention has a constitution according to formula (I)



wherein the reducing end of the starch molecule is shown in the non-oxidized form and the terminal saccharide unit is shown in the hemiacetal form which, depending on e.g. the solvent, may be in equilibrium with the aldehyde form.

The term hydroxyalkyl starch as used in the present invention is not limited to compounds where the terminal carbohydrate moiety comprises hydroxyalkyl groups R₁, R₂, and/or R₃ as depicted, for the sake of brevity, in formula (I), but also refers to compounds in which at

least one hydroxyalkyl group is present anywhere, either in the terminal carbohydrate moiety and/or in the remaining part of the starch molecule, HAS', is substituted by a hydroxyalkyl group R₁, R₂, or R₃.

- 5 Hydroxyalkyl starch comprising two or more different hydroxyalkyl groups are also possible.

The at least one hydroxyalkyl group comprised in HAS may contain two or more hydroxy groups. According to a preferred embodiment, the at least one hydroxyalkyl group
10 comprised HAS contains one hydroxy group.

The expression "hydroxyalkyl starch" also includes derivatives wherein the alkyl group is mono- or polysubstituted. In this context, it is preferred that the alkyl group is substituted with a halogen, especially fluorine, or with an aryl group. Furthermore, the hydroxy group
15 of a hydroxyalkyl group may be esterified or etherified.

Furthermore, instead of alkyl, also linear or branched substituted or unsubstituted alkene groups may be used.

- 20 Hydroxyalkyl starch is an ether derivative of starch. Besides of said ether derivatives, also other starch derivatives can be used in the context of the present invention. For example, derivatives are useful which comprise esterified hydroxy groups. These derivatives may be e.g. derivatives of unsubstituted mono- or dicarboxylic acids with 2-12 carbon atoms or of substituted derivatives thereof. Especially useful are derivatives of unsubstituted
25 monocarboxylic acids with 2-6 carbon atoms, especially derivatives of acetic acid. In this context, acetyl starch, butyryl starch and propionyl starch are preferred.

Furthermore, derivatives of unsubstituted dicarboxylic acids with 2-6 carbon atoms are preferred.

30

In the case of derivatives of dicarboxylic acids, it is useful that the second carboxy group of the dicarboxylic acid is also esterified. Furthermore, derivatives of monoalkyl esters of dicarboxylic acids are also suitable in the context of the present invention.

For the substituted mono- or dicarboxylic acids, the substitute groups may be preferably the same as mentioned above for substituted alkyl residues.

Techniques for the esterification of starch are known in the art (see e.g. Klemm D. et al, Comprehensive Cellulose Chemistry Vol. 2, 1998, Wiley-VCH, Weinheim, New York, especially chapter 4.4, Esterification of Cellulose (ISBN 3-527-29489-9).

According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, hydroxyalkyl starch according to above-mentioned formula (I) is employed. In formula (I), the saccharide ring described explicitly and the residue denoted as HAS' together represent the preferred hydroxyalkyl starch molecule. The other saccharide ring structures comprised in HAS' may be the same as or different from the explicitly described saccharide ring.

As far as the residues R_1 , R_2 and R_3 according to formula (I) are concerned there are no specific limitations. According to a preferred embodiment, R_1 , R_2 and R_3 are independently hydrogen or a hydroxyalkyl group, a hydroxyaryl group, a hydroxyaralkyl group or a hydroxyalkaryl group having of from 2 to 10 carbon atoms in the respective alkyl residue or a group $(CH_2CH_2O)_n-H$ wherein n is an integer, preferably 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6. Hydrogen and hydroxyalkyl groups having of from 2 to 10 are preferred. More preferably, the hydroxyalkyl group has from 2 to 6 carbon atoms, more preferably from 2 to 4 carbon atoms, and even more preferably from 2 to 3 carbon atoms. "Hydroxyalkyl starch" therefore preferably comprises hydroxyethyl starch, hydroxypropyl starch and hydroxybutyl starch, wherein hydroxyethyl starch and hydroxypropyl starch are particularly preferred and hydroxyethyl starch is most preferred.

The alkyl, aryl, aralkyl and/or alkaryl group may be linear or branched and suitably substituted.

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method an a conjugate as described above wherein R_1 , R_2 and R_3 are independently hydrogen or a linear or branched hydroxyalkyl group with from 2 to 6 carbon atoms.

Thus, R_1 , R_2 and R_3 preferably may be hydroxyhexyl, hydroxypentyl, hydroxybutyl, hydroxypropyl such as 2-hydroxypropyl, 3-hydroxypropyl, 2-hydroxyisopropyl,

hydroxyethyl such as 2-hydroxyethyl, hydrogen and the 2-hydroxyethyl group being especially preferred.

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above wherein R_1 , R_2 and R_3 are independently hydrogen or a 2-hydroxyethyl group, an embodiment wherein at least one residue R_1 , R_2 and R_3 being 2-hydroxyethyl being especially preferred.

Hydroxyethyl starch (HES) is most preferred for all embodiments of the present invention.

Therefore, the present invention relates to the method and the conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is hydroxyethyl starch and the polymer derivative is a hydroxyethyl starch derivative.

Hydroxyethyl starch (HES) is a derivative of naturally occurring amylopectin and is degraded by alpha-amylase in the body. HES is a substituted derivative of the carbohydrate polymer amylopectin, which is present in corn starch at a concentration of up to 95 % by weight. HES exhibits advantageous biological properties and is used as a blood volume replacement agent and in hemodilution therapy in the clinics (Sommermeyer et al., 1987, Krankenhauspharmazie, 8(8), 271-278; and Weidler et al., 1991, Arzneimittel-Forschung/Drug Res., 41, 494-498).

Amylopectin consists of glucose moieties, wherein in the main chain alpha-1,4-glycosidic bonds are present and at the branching sites alpha-1,6-glycosidic bonds are found. The physical-chemical properties of this molecule are mainly determined by the type of glycosidic bonds. Due to the nicked alpha-1,4-glycosidic bond, helical structures with about six glucose-monomers per turn are produced. The physico-chemical as well as the biochemical properties of the polymer can be modified via substitution. The introduction of a hydroxyethyl group can be achieved via alkaline hydroxyethylation. By adapting the reaction conditions it is possible to exploit the different reactivity of the respective hydroxy group in the unsubstituted glucose monomer with respect to a hydroxyethylation. Owing to this fact, the skilled person is able to influence the substitution pattern to a limited extent.

HES is mainly characterized by the molecular weight distribution and the degree of substitution. There are two possibilities of describing the substitution degree:

1. The degree of substitution can be described relatively to the portion of substituted glucose monomers with respect to all glucose moieties.
- 5 2. The degree of substitution can be described as the molar substitution, wherein the number of hydroxyethyl groups per glucose moiety are described.

In the context of the present invention, the degree of substitution, denoted as DS, relates to the molar substitution, as described above (see also Sommermeyer et al., 1987, *Krankenhauspharmazie*, 8(8), 271-278, as cited above, in particular p. 273).

10

HES solutions are present as polydisperse compositions, wherein each molecule differs from the other with respect to the polymerisation degree, the number and pattern of branching sites, and the substitution pattern. HES is therefore a mixture of compounds with different molecular weight. Consequently, a particular HES solution is determined by
15 average molecular weight with the help of statistical means. In this context, M_n is calculated as the arithmetic mean depending on the number of molecules. Alternatively, M_w (or MW), the weight mean, represents a unit which depends on the mass of the HES.

In the context of the present invention, hydroxyethyl starch may preferably have a mean
20 molecular weight (weight mean) of from 1 to 300 kD. Hydroxyethyl starch can further exhibit a preferred molar degree of substitution of from 0.1 to 3, preferably 0.1 to 2, more preferred, 0.1 to 0.9, preferably 0.1 to 0.8, and a preferred ratio between $C_2 : C_6$ substitution in the range of from 2 to 20 with respect to the hydroxyethyl groups.

25 The term "mean molecular weight" as used in the context of the present invention relates to the weight as determined according to the LALLS-(low angle laser light scattering)-GPC method as described in Sommermeyer et al., 1987, *Krankenhauspharmazie*, 8(8), 271-278; and Weidler et al., 1991, *Arzneim.-Forschung/Drug Res.*, 41, 494-498. For mean molecular weights of 10 kD and smaller, additionally, the calibration was carried out with
30 a standard which had previously been qualified by LALLS-GPC.

According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the mean molecular weight of hydroxyethyl starch employed is from 1 to 300 kD, more preferably from 2 to 200 kD, more preferably of from 4 to 130 kD, more preferably of from 4 to 70 kD.

An example of HES having a mean molecular weight of about 130 kD is a HES with a degree of substitution of 0.1 to 0.9, preferably 0.2 to 0.8 such as 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7, or 0.8, preferably of 0.4 to 0.7 such as 0.4, 0.5, 0.6, or 0.7.

5

An example for HES with a mean molecular weight of about 130 kD is Voluven® from Fresenius. Voluven® is an artificial colloid, employed, e.g., for volume replacement used in the therapeutic indication for therapy and prophylaxis of hypovolaemia. The characteristics of Voluven® are a mean molecular weight of 130,000 +/- 20,000 D, a molar substitution of 0.4 and a C2 : C6 ratio of about 9:1.

10

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and to conjugates as described above wherein the hydroxyalkyl starch is hydroxyethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of from 4 to 100 kD, preferably of from 4 to 70 kD.

15

Preferred ranges of the mean molecular weight are, e.g., 4 to 70 kD or 10 to 70 kD or 12 to 70 kD or 18 to 70 kD or 50 to 70 kD or 4 to 50 kD or 10 to 50 kD or 12 to 50 kD or 18 to 50 kD or 4 to 18 kD or 10 to 18 kD or 12 to 18 kD or 4 to 12 kD or 10 to 12 kD or 4 to 10 kD.

20

According to particularly preferred embodiments of the present invention, the mean molecular weight of hydroxyethyl starch employed is in the range of from more than 4 kD and below 70 kD, such as about 10 kD, or in the range of from 9 to 10 kD or from 10 to 11 kD or from 9 to 11 kD, or about 12 kD, or in the range of from 11 to 12 kD or from 12 to 13 kD or from 11 to 13 kD, or about 18 kD, or in the range of from 17 to 18 kD or from 18 to 19 kD or from 17 to 19 kD, or about 50 kD, or in the range of from 49 to 50 kD or from 50 to 51 kD or from 49 to 51 kD.

25

As to the upper limit of the molar degree of substitution (DS), values of up to 3.0 such as 0.9, 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5, 1.6, 1.7, 1.8, 1.9 or 2.0 are also possible, values of below 2.0 being preferred, values of below 1.5 being more preferred, values of below 1.0 such as 0.7, 0.8 or 0.9 being still more preferred.

30

Therefore, preferred ranges of the molar degree of substitution are from 0.1 to 2 or from 0.1 to 1.5 or from 0.1 to 1.0 or from 0.1 to 0.9 or from 0.1 to 0.8. More preferred ranges of the molar degree of substitution are from 0.2 to 2 or from 0.2 to 1.5 or from 0.2 to 1.0 or from 0.2 to 0.9 or from 0.2 to 0.8. Still more preferred ranges of the molar degree of substitution are from 0.3 to 2 or from 0.3 to 1.5 or from 0.3 to 1.0 or from 0.3 to 0.9 or from 0.3 to 0.8. Even more preferred ranges of the molar degree of substitution are from 0.4 to 2 or from 0.4 to 1.5 or from 0.4 to 1.0 or from 0.4 to 0.9 or from 0.4 to 0.8.

As far as the degree of substitution (DS) is concerned, DS is preferably at least 0.1, more preferably at least 0.2, more preferably at least 0.4 and more preferably at least 0.4. Preferred ranges of DS are from 0.1 to 3, preferably 0.1 to 2, more preferred, 0.1 to 0.9, more preferably from 0.1 to 0.8, more preferably from 0.2 to 0.8, more preferably from 0.3 to 0.8 and even more preferably from 0.4 to 0.8, still more preferably from 0.1 to 0.7, more preferably from 0.2 to 0.7, more preferably from 0.3 to 0.7 and more preferably from 0.4 to 0.7. Particularly preferred values of DS are, e.g., 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7, 0.8 or 0.9, with 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7 or 0.8 being more preferred, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7 or 0.8 being even more preferred, 0.4, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7 or 0.8 being still more preferred and, e.g. 0.4 and 0.7 being particularly preferred.

In the context of the present invention, a given value of the molar degree of substitution such as 0.9 may be the exact value or may be understood as being in a range of from 0.85 to 0.94 or 0.8 may be the exact value or may be understood as being in a range of from 0.75 to 0.84. Therefore, for example, a given value of 0.1 may be the exact value of 0.1 or be in the range of from 0.05 to 0.14, a given value of 0.4 may be the exact value of 0.4 or be in the range of from 0.35 to 0.44, or a given value of 0.7 may be the exact value of 0.7 or be in the range of from 0.65 to 0.74.

Particularly preferred combinations of molecular weight of the hydroxyalkyl starch, preferably hydroxyethyl starch, and its degree of substitution DS are, e.g., 10 kD and 0.4 or 10 kD and 0.7 or 12 kD and 0.4 or 12 kD and 0.7 or 18 kD and 0.4 or 18 kD and 0.7 or 50 kD and 0.4 or 50 kD and 0.7 or 100 kD and 0.7.

As far as the ratio of C₂ : C₆ substitution is concerned, said substitution is preferably in the range of from 2 to 20, more preferably in the range of from 2 to 15 and even more preferably in the range of from 3 to 12.

5 According to a further embodiment of the present invention, also mixtures of hydroxyethyl starches may be employed having different mean molecular weights and/or different degrees of substitution and/or different ratios of C₂ : C₆ substitution. Therefore, mixtures of hydroxyethyl starches may be employed having different mean molecular weights and different degrees of substitution and different ratios of C₂ : C₆ substitution, or having
10 different mean molecular weights and different degrees of substitution and the same or about the same ratio of C₂ : C₆ substitution, or having different mean molecular weights and the same or about the same degree of substitution and different ratios of C₂ : C₆ substitution, or having the same or about the same mean molecular weight and different degrees of substitution and different ratios of C₂ : C₆ substitution, or having different mean
15 molecular weights and the same or about the same degree of substitution and the same or about the same ratio of C₂ : C₆ substitution, or having the same or about the same mean molecular weights and different degrees of substitution and the same or about the same ratio of C₂ : C₆ substitution, or having the same or about the same mean molecular weight and the same or about the same degree of substitution and different ratios of C₂ : C₆
20 substitution, or having about the same mean molecular weight and about the same degree of substitution and about the same ratio of C₂ : C₆ substitution.

In different conjugates and/or different methods according to the present invention, different hydroxyalkyl starches, preferably different hydroxyethyl starches and/or different
25 hydroxyalkyl starch mixtures, preferably different hydroxyethyl starch mixtures, may be employed.

The reductive amination reaction according to the invention, wherein the polymer or polymer derivative is covalently linked via at least one aldehyde group to at least one
30 amino group of the protein by reductive amination, is preferably carried out at a temperature of from 0 to 40 °C, more preferably 0 to 37 °C, more preferably of from 0 to 25 °C, in particular from 4 to 21 °C, but especially preferably of from 0 to 21 °C. The reaction time preferably ranges of from 0.5 to 72 h, more preferably of from 2 to 48 h and

especially preferably of from 4 to 7 h. As solvent for the reaction, an aqueous medium is preferred.

Thus, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above,
5 wherein the reductive amination is carried out at a temperature of from 4 to 21 °C, but especially preferably 0 to 21 °C.

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein reductive amination is carried out in an aqueous medium.

10

Thus, the present invention also relates to a method and conjugate as described above, wherein the reductive amination is carried out at a temperature of from 4 to 21 °C, but especially preferably 0 to 21 °C, in an aqueous medium.

15

The term "aqueous medium" as used in the context of the present invention relates to a solvent or a mixture of solvents comprising water in the range of from at least 10 % per weight, more preferably at least 20 % per weight, more preferably at least 30 % per weight, more preferably at least 40 % per weight, more preferably at least 50 % per weight, more preferably at least 60 % per weight, more preferably at least 70 % per weight, more
20 preferably at least 80 % per weight, even more preferably at least 90 % per weight or up to 100 % per weight, based on the weight of the solvents involved. The preferred reaction medium is water.

25

The pH value of the reaction medium is generally in the range of from 4 to 9 or from 4 to 8 or from 4 to 7.5 or from 4 to 7.3.

30

According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the pH at which the reductive amination reaction is carried out is below 10, preferably below 7.5, preferably 7.3, more preferably smaller or equal 7 and most preferably below 7, i.e. in the acidic
range. Preferred ranges are therefore of from 3 to below 7, more preferably of from 3.5 to 6.5, still more preferably of from 4 to 6, still more preferably of from 4.5 to 5.5 and especially preferably about 5.0, i.e. 4.6 or 4.7 or 4.8 or 4.9 or 5.0 or 5.1 or 5.2 or 5.3 or 5.4. Preferred ranges, are among others, 3 to 6.9 or 3 to 6.5 or 3 to 6 or 3 to 5.5 or 3 to 5 or 3 to 4.5 or 3 to 4 or 3 to 3.5 or 3.5 to 6.9 or 3.5 to 6.5 or 3.5 to 6 or 3.5 to 5.5 or 3.5 to 5 or 3.5

to 4.5 or 3.5 to 4 or 4 to 6.9 or 4 to 6.5 or 4 to 6. or 4 to 5.5 or 4 to 5 or 4 to 4.5 or 4.5 to 6.9 or 4.5 to 6.5 or 4.5 to 6 or 4.5 to 5.5 or 4.5 to 5 or 5 to 6.9 or 5 to 6.5 or 5 to 6 or 5 to 5.5 or 5.5 to 6.9 or 5.5 to 6.5 or 5.5 to 6 or 6 to 6.9 or 6 to 6.5 or 6.5 to 6.9.

- 5 Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the reductive amination is carried out at a pH of 7 or less, more preferably at a pH of 6 or less.

Thus, the present invention also relates to a method and conjugate as described above,
10 wherein the reductive amination is carried out at a temperature of from 0 to 21 °C, preferably 4 to 21 °C at a pH of 7.5 or less, preferably 7 or less, preferably of 6 or less.

Hence, the present invention also relates to a method and conjugate as described above, wherein the reductive amination is carried out in an aqueous medium at a pH of 7 or less,
15 preferably of 6 or less.

Accordingly, the present invention also relates to a method and conjugate as described above, wherein the reductive amination is carried out at a temperature of from 4 to 21 °C in an aqueous medium at a pH of 7 or less, preferably of 6 or less.

20

The molar ratio of polymer derivative : protein used for the reaction is preferably in the range of from 200:1 to 5:1, more preferably of from 100:1 to 10:1 and especially preferably of from 75:1 to 20:1 .

- 25 It was surprisingly found that it was possible, especially at the preferred pH ranges given above, particularly at a pH below 7 and greater or equal 4, to react the polymer derivative predominantly with the amino group located at the N terminus of the protein. The term "predominantly" as used in the context of the present invention relates to an embodiment where at least 80 %, preferably at least 85 % of the N-terminal amino groups available are
30 reacted via reductive amination. It is also possible to react at least 90 % or at least 95 % or at least 96 % or at least 97 % or at least 98 % or at least 99 % of the N-terminal amino groups available. Although coupling to amino groups other than the N-terminal amino group could not be ruled out completely, it is believed that coupling via reductive amination according to the present invention at a pH of below 7, preferably below 6, took

place essentially selectively at the N-terminal amino group. In particular, these reaction conditions are preferred for proteins which are stable at these conditions. Should a protein e.g. be acid labile, such as alpha1-antitrypsin, then it is preferred to chose appropriate reaction conditions, in particular a pH from lower than 7.5 to greater than 5.

5

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the protein comprises the N-terminal amino group and at least one further amino group, said conjugate comprises the polymer being predominantly coupled to the N-terminal amino group.

10

According to an especially preferred embodiment, the present invention relates to a method of linking aldehyde or keto or hemiacetal functionalized hydroxyalkyl starch or an aldehyde or keto or hemiacetal functionalized hydroxyalkyl starch derivative predominantly to the N-terminal amino group of a protein, said method comprising
15 subjecting said hydroxyalkyl starch or derivative thereof to a reductive amination reaction, at a pH of 7 or less, preferably at a pH of 6 or less, said reductive amination reaction being carried out preferably in an aqueous medium.

20

According to the present invention, aldehyde functionalized hydroxyalkyl starch or an aldehyde functionalized hydroxyalkyl starch derivative is preferred.

25

According to a still further preferred embodiment, the present invention relates to a method of linking aldehyde or keto or hemiacetal functionalized hydroxyethyl starch or an aldehyde or keto or hemiacetal functionalized hydroxyethyl starch derivative selectively to
25 the N-terminal amino group of a protein, said method comprising subjecting said hydroxyalkyl starch or derivative thereof to a reductive amination reaction, at a pH of 7 or less, preferably at a pH of 6 or less, said reductive amination reaction being carried out preferably in an aqueous medium, the hydroxyethyl starch employed preferably being hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 10 kD and a DS of about 0.4
30 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 10 kD and a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 12 kD and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 12 kD and a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 18 kD and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 18 kD and

a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 50 kD and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 50 kD and a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 100 kD and a DS of about 0.7.

5

The reaction of the polymer derivative and the protein between the aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group and the amino group is a reductive amination wherein a Schiff's base is produced. Subsequently after the reaction, this base may be reduced by at least one reductive agent to give a stable linkage between the polymer derivative and the protein. It is also possible to carry out the reaction in the presence of at least one reductive agent. According to a preferred embodiment, the reductive amination reaction is carried out in the presence of at least one reductive agent.

10

Preferred reductive agents are sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, organic borane complex compounds such as a 4-(dimethylamin)pyridine borane complex, N-ethyl-diisopropylamine borane complex, N-ethylmorpholine borane complex, N-methylmorpholine borane complex, N-phenylmorpholine borane complex, lutidine borane complex, triethylamine borane complex, or trimethylamine borane complex. Particularly preferred is sodium cyanoborohydride.

15
20

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the reductive amination is carried out in the presence of NaCNBH_3 .

25

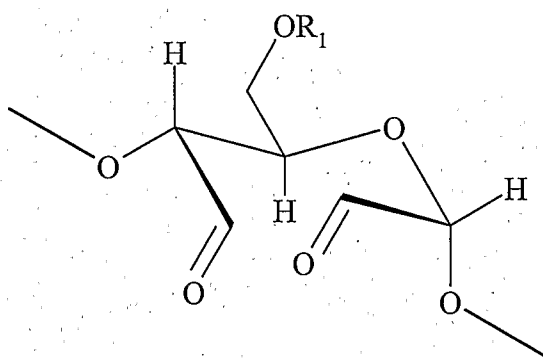
Hence, the present invention also relates to a method and conjugate as described above, wherein the reductive amination is carried out in an aqueous medium at a pH of 7 or less, preferably of 6 or less in the presence of reductive agent, preferably NaCNBH_3 .

30

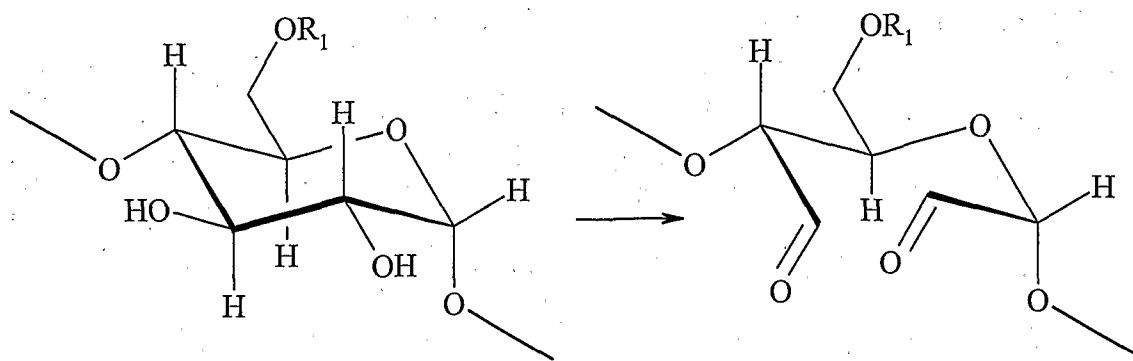
Accordingly, the present invention also relates to a method and conjugate as described above, wherein the reductive amination is carried out at a temperature of from 4 to 21 °C in an aqueous medium at a pH of 7 or less, preferably of 6 or less in the presence of reductive agent, preferably NaCNBH_3 .

The molar ratio of polymer derivative : protein used for the reaction is preferably in the range of from 200:1 to 10:1 more preferably of from 100:1 to 10:1 and especially preferably of from 75:1 to 20:1 .

- 5 Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method of producing a conjugate, said method comprising reacting a polymer or a polymer derivative comprising an aldehyde group in an aqueous medium with an amino group of the protein in the presence of a reductive agent, said reductive agent preferably being NaCNBH_3 .
- 10 According to the first preferred embodiment of the present invention, according to which the polymer comprises at least two aldehyde groups which are introducing in the polymer by a ring-opening oxidation reaction, the polymer preferably comprises at least one structure according to formula



- 15 According to this embodiment of the present invention, each oxidation agent or combination of oxidation agents may be employed which is capable of oxidizing at least one saccharide ring of the polymer to give an opened saccharide ring having at least one, preferably at least two aldehyde groups. This reaction is illustrated by the following reaction scheme which shows a saccharide ring of the polymer which is oxidized to give an opened ring having two aldehyde groups:



Suitable oxidating agents are, among others, periodates such as alkaline metal periodates or mixtures of two or more thereof, with sodium periodate and potassium periodate being preferred.

5 Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is subjected to a ring-opening oxidation reaction using a periodate to give a polymer derivative having at least one, preferably at least two aldehyde groups.

10 For this oxidation reaction, the polymer may be employed with its reducing end either in the oxidized or in the non-oxidized form, the non-oxidized form being preferred.

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is employed with its reducing end in the non-oxidized form.

15

The reaction temperature is in a preferred range of from 0 to 40 °C, more preferably of from 0 to 25 °C and especially preferably of from 0 to 5 °C. The reaction time is in a preferred range of from 1 min to 5 h and especially preferably of from 10 min to 4 h. Depending on the desired degree of oxidation, i.e. the number of aldehyde groups

20 resulting from the oxidation reaction, the molar ratio of periodate : polymer may be appropriately chosen.

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the ring-opening oxidation reaction is carried out at a temperature of from

25 0 to 5 °C.

The oxidation reaction of the polymer with periodate is preferably carried out in an aqueous medium, most preferably in water.

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the ring-opening oxidation reaction is carried out in an aqueous medium. The suitable pH value of the reaction mixture may be adjusted by adding at least one suitable buffer. Among the preferred buffers, sodium acetate buffer, phosphate or borate buffers may be mentioned.

- 10 The hydroxyethyl starch subjected to said ring-opening oxidation reaction is preferably hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 10 kD and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 10 kD and a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 12 kD and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 12 kD and a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 18 kD and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 18 kD and a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 50 kD and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 50 kD and a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 100 kD and a DS of about 0.7.

The resulting polymer derivative may be purified from the reaction mixture by at least one suitable method. If necessary, the polymer derivative may be precipitated prior to the isolation by at least one suitable method.

- 25 If the polymer derivative is precipitated first, it is possible, e.g., to contact the reaction mixture with at least one solvent or solvent mixture other than the solvent or solvent mixture present in the reaction mixture at suitable temperatures. According to a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention where an aqueous medium, preferably water is used as solvent, the reaction mixture is contacted with 2-propanol or with am mixture of acetone and ethanol, preferably a 1:1 mixture (v/v), indicating equal volumes of said compounds, at a temperature, preferably in the range of from -20 to +50 °C and especially preferably in the range of from -20 to 25 °C.

Isolation of the polymer derivative may be carried out by a suitable process which may comprise one or more steps. According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the polymer derivative is first separated off the reaction mixture or the mixture of the reaction mixture with, e.g., aqueous 2-propanol mixture, by a suitable method such as centrifugation or filtration. In a second step, the separated polymer derivative may be subjected to a further treatment such as an after-treatment like dialysis, centrifugal filtration or pressure filtration, ion exchange chromatography, reversed phase chromatography, HPLC, MPLC, gel filtration and/or lyophilisation. According to an even more preferred embodiment, the separated polymer derivative is first dialysed, preferably against water, and then lyophilized until the solvent content of the reaction product is sufficiently low according to the desired specifications of the product. Lyophilisation may be carried out at temperature of from 20 to 35 °C, preferably of from 20 to 30 °C.

According to a preferred embodiment, the oxidized polymer resulting from the oxidation reaction is purified using at least one suitable method such as ultrafiltration and/or dialysis in order to, e.g., remove undesirable low molecular weight salts and polymer components, thereby also offering a means of controlling the molecular weight range of oxidized polymer.

The oxidized polymer can be used directly for the reaction with the protein or is suitably recovered in a first step, e.g. by lyophilization, and redissolved in water for conjugation to the protein in a second step. As to the coupling of at least one amino group of the protein with at least one aldehyde group of the polymer by reductive amination, reference is made to the detailed disclosure above concerning the specific reaction parameters of the reductive amination reaction such as pH or temperature. According to especially preferred embodiments of the present invention, according to which rhIL 2, rhIL 3, rhIFN alpha, rhIFN beta, rhEPO, rhAT III, rhG-CSF, BSA, Myoglobin and SOD are used as proteins, the reductive amination is preferably carried out at a temperature of from 0 to 5 °C such as about 4 °C at a pH of about 4.5 to 5.5 such as about 5.0 and for a reaction time of about 20 to 30 h such as about 24 h.

According to the second preferred embodiment, the polymer is reacted with an at least bifunctional compound comprising at least one functional group M capable of being reacted with the polymer and at least one functional group Q which is an aldehyde group or

a keto group or a hemiacetal group and which is reacted with an amino group of the protein by reductive amination.

It is preferred to employ a compound having, apart from the aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group, at least one carboxy group or at least one reactive carboxy group, preferably one carboxy group or one reactive carboxy group. The aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group and the carboxy group or the reactive carboxy group may be separated by any suitable spacer. Among others, the spacer may be an optionally substituted, linear, branched and/or cyclic hydrocarbon residue. Generally, the hydrocarbon residue has from 1 to 60, preferably from 1 to 40, more preferably from 1 to 20, more preferably from 2 to 10, more preferably from 2 to 6 and especially preferably from 2 to 4 carbon atoms. If heteroatoms are present, the separating group comprises generally from 1 to 20, preferably from 1 to 8 and especially preferably from 1 to 4 heteroatoms. The hydrocarbon residue may comprise an optionally branched alkyl chain or an aryl group or a cycloalkyl group having, e.g., from 5 to 7 carbon atoms, or be an aralkyl group, an alkaryl group where the alkyl part may be a linear and/or cyclic alkyl group. According to an even more preferred embodiment, the hydrocarbon residue is an aryl residue having 5 to 7 and preferably 6 carbon atoms. Most preferably, the hydrocarbon residue is the benzene residue. According to this preferred embodiment, the carboxy group and the aldehyde group may be located at the benzene ring in 1,4-position, 1,3-position or 1,2-position, the 1,4-position being preferred.

As reactive carboxy group, a reactive ester, isothiocyanates or isocyanate may be mentioned. Preferred reactive esters are derived from N-hydroxy succinimides such as N-hydroxy succinimide or Sulfo-N-hydroxy succinimide, suitably substituted phenols such as p-nitrophenol, o,p-dinitrophenol, o,o'-dinitrophenol, trichlorophenol such as 2,4,6-trichlorophenol or 2,4,5-trichlorophenol, trifluorophenol such as 2,4,6-trifluorophenol or 2,4,5-trifluorophenol, pentachlorophenol, pentafluorophenol, or hydroxyazoles such as hydroxy benzotriazole. Especially preferred are N-hydroxy succinimides, with N-hydroxy succinimide and Sulfo-N-hydroxy succinimide being especially preferred. All alcohols may be employed alone or as suitable combination of two or more thereof. As reactive ester, pentafluorophenyl ester and N-hydroxy succinimide ester are especially preferred.

Thus, according to a preferred embodiment, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with formylbenzoic acid.

5 According to another preferred embodiment, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with formylbenzoic acid pentafluorophenyl ester.

10 According to yet another preferred embodiment, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with formylbenzoic acid N-hydroxysuccinimide ester.

15 According to yet another embodiment, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with 4-(4-formyl-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)butyric acid.

20 According to another preferred embodiment, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with a bifunctional compound which is a biocompatible compound selected from the group consisting of alpha-keto carboxylic acids, sialic acids or derivatives thereof and pyridoxal phosphate.

25 As regards alpha-keto carboxylic acids, those are preferably alpha-keto carboxylic acids derived from amino acids and can in most instances also be found in the human body. Preferred alpha-keto carboxylic acids derived from amino acids are selected from the group consisting of keto-valine, keto-leucine, keto-isoleucine and keto-alanine. The carboxy group of the alpha-keto carboxylic acids is reacted with group Q of the polymer being an amino group. Therewith an amido group is formed. The remaining free keto group of the alpha-keto carboxylic acid may then be reacted with a functional group of the protein, in particular an amino group. Therewith an imino group is formed which may be hydrogenated.

30 Accordingly, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with an alpha-keto carboxylic acid.

As regards sialic acids or derivatives thereof those are preferably biocompatible, in particular they are sugars found in the human body, which are N- and/or O-acetylated. In a preferred embodiment, sialic acids are N-acetyl neuramic acids. These compounds show a desired rigidity because of the pyranose structure in order to fulfill the function as a spacer.

5 On the other hand, it may be possible to introduce an aldehyd group into these compounds through selective oxidation. Sialic acids are found in the human body e.g. as terminal monosaccarides in glycan chains of glycosylated proteins.

10 In a preferred embodiment, the sialic acid may be selectively oxidized to an aldehyde group.

Methods to selectively oxidize sialic acids are known in the art, e.g. from L.W. Jaques, B.F. Riesco, W. Weltner, Carbohydrate Research, 83 (1980), 21 – 32 and T. Masuda, S. Shibuya, M. Arai, S. Yoshida, T. Tomozawa, A. Ohno, M. Yamashita, T. Honda,
15 Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters, 13 (2003), 669 - 673. Preferably the oxidation of the sialic acid may be conducted prior to the reaction with the amino group of the polymer

20 The optionally oxidized sialic acid, may then be reacted via its carboxylic acid group with the amino group of the polymer.

The resulting compounds contain an aldehyde group which can then further be reacted by reductive amination with an amino group of a protein.

25 Accordingly, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with an optionally oxidized sialic acid.

As regards pyridoxal phosphate (PyP), this is a highly biocompatible bifunctional compound and is also called vitamine B6. PyP is a co-enzyme which participates in
30 transaminations, decarboxylations, racemizations, and numerous modifications of amino acid side chains. All PyP requiring enzymes act via the formation of a Schiff's base between the amino acid and the co-enzyme.

The phosphate group of the PyP may be reacted with the amino group of the polymer, preferably hydroxyalkyl starch, in particular hydroxyethyl starch, forming a phosphoramidate. The aldehyde group of PyP may then be reacted with the amino group of a protein, forming a Schiff's base, which may then be reduced. In a preferred embodiment,
5 the structure of the conjugate is HES-NH-P(O)₂-O-(pyridoxal)-CH-NH-protein.

In case of PyP, the functional group of the polymer is preferably introduced into the polymer by use of a di-amino compound as described above.

10 Accordingly, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with pyridoxal phosphate.

The hydroxyethyl starch subjected to the reaction with the compound comprising M, M preferably being a carboxy group or a reactive carboxy group and Q being an aldehyde
15 group or a keto group or a hemiacetal group, is most preferably hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 10 kD and a DS of about 0.7. Also possible are hydroxethyl starches having a mean molecular weight of about 10 kD and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 12 kD and a DS
20 of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 12 kD and a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 18 kD and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 18 kD and a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 50 kD
25 and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 50 kD and a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 100 kD and a DS of about 0.7. Particularly preferably, the hydroxyalkyl starch and even more preferably the hydroxyethyl starch is employed with its reducing end in the oxidized form.

The resulting polymer derivative with the aldehyde group or the keto group or the
30 hemiacetal group is subsequently reacted with an amino group of the protein via reductive amination. As to the coupling of at least one amino group of the protein with at least one aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group of the polymer by reductive amination, reference is made to the detailed disclosure above concerning the specific reaction parameters of the reductive amination reaction such as pH or temperature. According to an

especially preferred embodiment of the present invention, according to which G-CSF is used as protein, the reaction with the amino group of the protein is preferably carried out at a temperature of from 0 to 40 °C, more preferably of from 0 to 25 °C and especially preferably of from 4 to 21 °C. The reaction time preferably ranges of from 30 min to 72 h, more preferably of from 2 to 48 h and especially preferably of from 4 h to 17 h. As solvent for the reaction, an aqueous medium is preferred. The pH value of the reaction medium is preferably in the range of from 4 to 9, more preferably of from 4 to 8 and especially preferably of from 4.5 to 5.5.

10 According to the third preferred embodiment, the polymer is reacted at its optionally oxidized reducing end with an at least bifunctional compound comprising an amino group M and a functional group Q, wherein said amino group M is reacted with the optionally oxidized reducing end of the polymer and wherein the functional group Q is chemically modified to give an aldehyde functionalized polymer derivative which is reacted with an amino group of the protein by reductive amination.

The term "the polymer is reacted via the reducing end" or "the polymer is reacted via the oxidized reducing end" as used in the context of the present invention may relate to a process according to which the hydroxyalkyl starch is reacted predominantly via its (selectively oxidized) reducing end. The polymer is hydroxyalkyl starch, in particular hydroxyethyl starch.

This term "predominantly via its (selectively oxidized) reducing end" relates to processes according to which statistically more than 50 %, preferably at least 55 %, more preferably at least 60 %, more preferably at least 65 %, more preferably at least 70 %, more preferably at least 75 %, more preferably at least 80 %, more preferably at least 85 %, more preferably at least 90 %, and still more preferably at least 95 % such as 95 %, 96 %, 97 %, 98 %, or 99 % of the polymer molecules employed for a given reaction are reacted via at least one (selectively oxidized) reducing end per polymer molecule, wherein a given polymer molecule which is reacted via at least one reducing end can be reacted in the same given reaction via at least one further suitable functional group which is comprised in said polymer molecule and which is not a reducing end. If one or more polymer molecule(s) is (are) reacted via at least one reducing and simultaneously via at least one further suitable functional group which is comprised in this (these) polymer molecule(s) and which is not a

reducing end, statistically preferably more than 50 %, preferably at least 55 %, more preferably at least 60 %, more preferably at least 65 %, more preferably at least 70 %, more preferably at least 75 %, more preferably at least 80 %, more preferably at least 85 %, more preferably at least 90 %, and still more preferably at least 95 % such as 95 %, 96 %, 97 %, 98 %, or 99 % of all reacted functional groups of these polymer molecules, said functional groups including the reducing ends, are reducing ends.

The term "reducing end" as used in the context of the present invention relates to the terminal aldehyde group of a polymer molecule which may be present as aldehyde group and/or as corresponding acetal form. In case the reducing end is oxidized, the aldehyde or acetal group is in the form of a carboxy group and/or of the corresponding lactone.

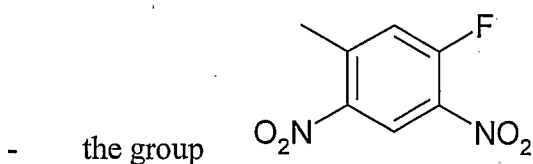
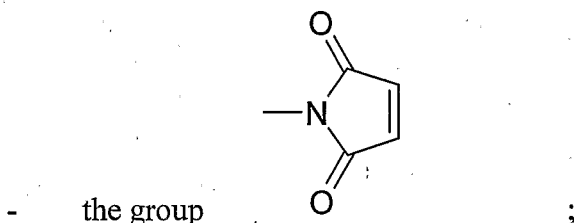
As to functional group Q, the following functional groups are to be mentioned, among others:

- 15 - C-C-double bonds or C-C-triple bonds or aromatic C-C-bonds;
- the thio group or the hydroxy groups;
- alkyl sulfonic acid hydrazide, aryl sulfonic acid hydrazide;
- 1,2-dioles;
- 1,2 amino-thioalcohols;
- 20 - azides;
- 1,2-aminoalcohols;
- the amino group -NH₂ or derivatives of the amino groups comprising the structure unit -NH- such as aminoalkyl groups, aminoaryl group, aminoaralkyl groups, or alkarylaminogroups;
- 25 - the hydroxylamino group -O-NH₂, or derivatives of the hydroxylamino group comprising the structure unit -O-NH-, such as hydroxylalkylamino groups, hydroxylarylaminogroups, hydroxylaralkylaminogroups, or hydroxalalkarylaminogroups;
- alkoxyamino groups, aryloxyamino groups, aralkyloxyamino groups, or
- 30 alkarylloxyamino groups, each comprising the structure unit -NH-O-;
- residues having a carbonyl group, -Q-C(=G)-M, wherein G is O or S, and M is, for example,
- -OH or -SH;

- an alkoxy group, an aryloxy group, an aralkyloxy group, or an alkaryloxy group;
- an alkylthio group, an arylthio group, an aralkylthio group, or an alkarylthio group;
- 5 -- an alkylcarbonyloxy group, an arylcarbonyloxy group, an aralkylcarbonyloxy group, an alkarylcarbonyloxy group;
- activated esters such as esters of hydroxylamines having imid structure such as N-hydroxysuccinimide or having a structure unit O-N where N is part of a heteroaryl compound or, with G = O and Q absent, such as aryloxy compounds
- 10 with a substituted aryl residue such as pentafluorophenyl, paranitrophenyl or trichlorophenyl;

wherein Q is absent or NH or a heteroatom such as S or O;

- -NH-NH₂, or -NH-NH-;
- -NO₂;
- 15 - the nitril group;
- carbonyl groups such as the aldehyde group or the keto group;
- the carboxy group;
- the -N=C=O group or the -N=C=S group;
- vinyl halide groups such as the vinyl iodide or the vinyl bromide group or triflate;
- 20 - -C≡C-H;
- -(C=NH₂Cl)-OAlkyl
- groups -(C=O)-CH₂-Hal wherein Hal is Cl, Br, or I;
- -CH=CH-SO₂-;
- a disulfide group comprising the structure -S-S-;



25

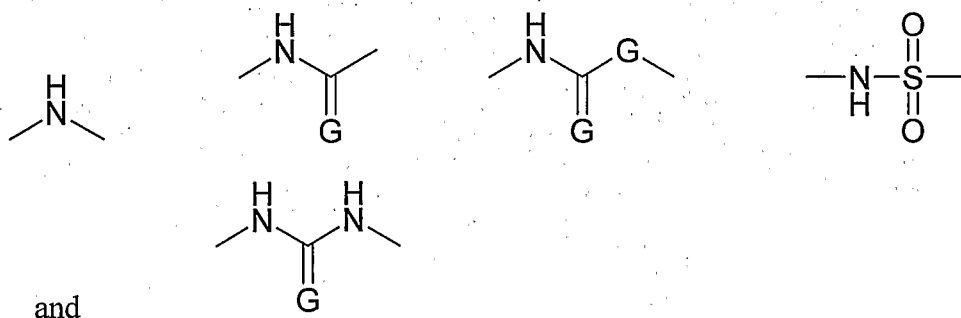
According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the term "functional group Q" relates to a functional group Q which comprises the chemical structure -NH-, e.g. -NH₂

or a derivative of the amino group comprising the structure unit -NH- such as aminoalkyl groups, aminoaryl group, aminoaralkyl groups, or alkarlyaminogroups.

According to one preferred embodiment of the present invention, the functional group M is a group having the structure R'-NH- where R' is hydrogen or a alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, arylcycloalkyl, alkaryl or cycloalkylaryl residue where the cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, arylcycloalkyl, alkaryl or cycloalkylaryl residue may be linked directly to the NH group or, according to another embodiment, may be linked by an oxygen bridge to the NH group. The alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, arylcycloalkyl, alkaryl, or cycloalkylaryl residues may be suitably substituted. As preferred substituents, halogenes such as F, Cl or Br may be mentioned. Especially preferred residues R' are hydrogen, alkyl and alkoxy groups, and even more preferred are hydrogen and unsubstituted alkyl and alkoxy groups.

Among the alkyl and alkoxy groups, groups with 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 C atoms are preferred. More preferred are methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, and isopropoxy groups. Especially preferred are methyl, ethyl, methoxy, ethoxy, and particular preference is given to methyl or methoxy.

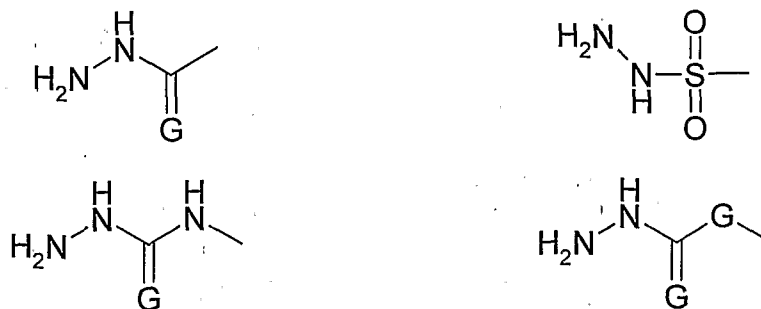
According to another embodiment of the present invention, the functional group M has the structure R'-NH-R''- where R'' preferably comprises the structure unit -NH- and/or the structure unit -(C=G)- where G is O or S, and/or the structure unit -SO₂-. Specific examples for the functional group R'' are



where, if G is present twice, it is independently O or S.

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as mentioned above wherein the functional group M is selected from the group consisting of





wherein G is O or S and, if present twice, independently O or S, and R' is methyl.

According to a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention, the functional group M is an amino group $-\text{NH}_2$.

5

According to a first alternative, the functional group M being an amino group NH_2 is reacted with the oxidized reducing end of the polymer resulting in an amido group linking the polymer and the compound comprising M and Q.

10

According to a second alternative, the functional group M being an amino group NH_2 is reacted with the non-oxidized reducing end of the polymer via reductive amination resulting in an imino group which is subsequently preferably hydrogenated to give a amino group, the imino group and the amino group, respectively, linking the polymer and the compound comprising M and Q. In this case, it is possible that the functional group Q is an amino group. In case that the resulting polymer derivative shall be subjected to a subsequent reaction with an at least bifunctional compound via a carboxy group or a reactive carboxy group, as described hereinunder, or another group of an at least bifunctional compound which is to be reacted with an amino group, it is preferred that the compound comprising M and Q is a primary amine which contains - as functional group - only one amino group.

15

20

In this specific case, although the compound contains only one functional group, it is regarded as bifunctional compound comprising M and Q wherein M is the amino group contained in the compound subjected to the reductive amination with the reducing end of the polymer, and wherein Q is the secondary amino group resulting from the reductive amination and subsequent hydrogenation.

25

According to a third alternative, the non-oxidized reducing end of the polymer is reacted with ammonia via reductive amination resulting in a terminal imino group of the polymer which is subsequently preferably hydrogenated to give a terminal amino group of the

polymer and thus a terminal primary amino group. In this specific case, ammonia is regarded as bifunctional compound comprising M and Q wherein M is NH_2 comprised in the ammonia employed, and wherein Q is the primary amino group resulting from reductive amination and subsequent hydrogenation.

5

The term "amino group Q" relates to a functional group Q which comprises the chemical structure -NH- , e.g. -NH_2 or a derivative of the amino group comprising the structure unit -NH- such as aminoalkyl groups, aminoaryl group, aminoaralkyl groups, or alkaryl amino groups.

10

According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the functional group Q is a group having the structure R'-NH- where R' is hydrogen or a alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, arylcycloalkyl, alkaryl or cycloalkylaryl residue where the cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, arylcycloalkyl, alkaryl or cycloalkylaryl residue may be linked directly to the NH group or, according to another embodiment, may be linked by an oxygen bridge to the NH group. The alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, arylcycloalkyl, alkaryl, or cycloalkylaryl residues may be suitably substituted. As preferred substituents, halogenes such as F, Cl or Br may be mentioned. Especially preferred residues R' are hydrogen, alkyl and alkoxy groups, and even more preferred are hydrogen and unsubstituted alkyl and alkoxy groups.

15

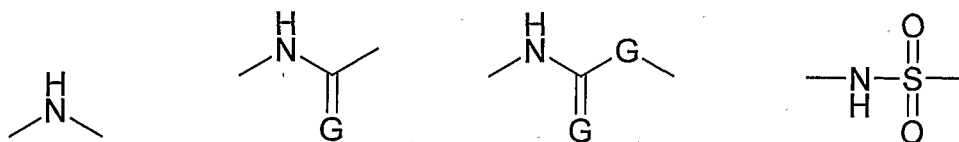
20

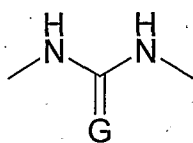
Among the alkyl and alkoxy groups, groups with 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 C atoms are preferred. More preferred are methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, and isopropoxy groups. Especially preferred are methyl, ethyl, methoxy, ethoxy, and particular preference is given to methyl or methoxy.

25

According to another embodiment of the present invention, the functional group Q has the structure R'-NH-R''- where R'' preferably comprises the structure unit -NH- and/or the structure unit -(C=G)- where G is O or S, and/or the structure unit $\text{-SO}_2\text{-}$. According to more preferred embodiments, the functional group R'' is selected from the group consisting of

30

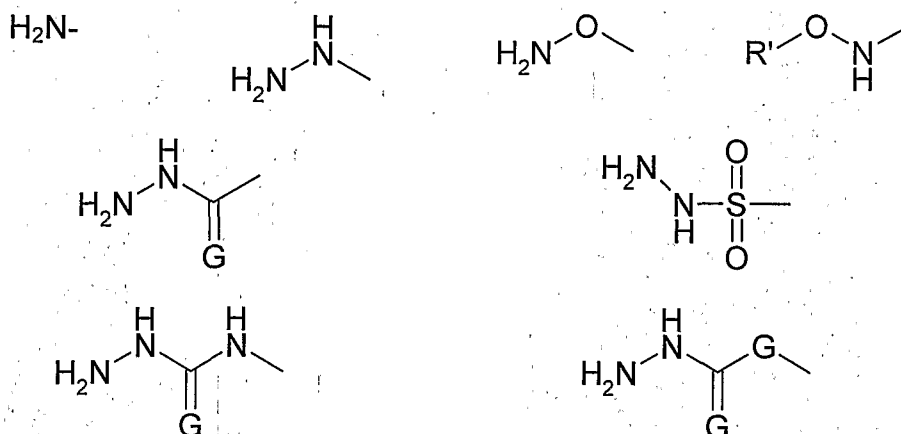




and

where, if G is present twice, it is independently O or S.

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as mentioned above wherein the functional group Q is selected from the group consisting of

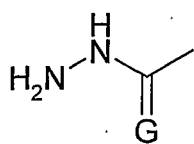


5 wherein G is O or S and, if present twice, independently O or S, and R' is methyl.

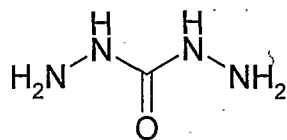
According to a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention, the functional group Q is an amino group -NH₂.

10 According to a still further preferred embodiment of the present invention, both M and Q comprise an amino group -NH-. According to a particularly preferred embodiment, both M and Q are an amino group -NH₂.

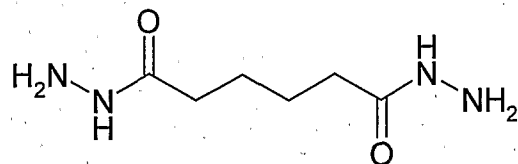
According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the compound comprising
15 M and Q is a homobifunctional compound, more preferably a homobifunctional compound comprising, as functional groups M and Q, most preferably the amino group -NH₂, or according to other embodiments, the hydroxylamino group -O-NH₂ or the group



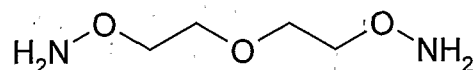
with G preferably being O. Specific examples for these compounds comprising M and Q
20 are



or



or



5

The hydroxyethyl starch subjected to the reaction with the compound comprising M, M preferably being an amino group -NH- and more preferably being an amino group -NH₂, still more preferably both M and Q comprising an amino group -NH- and particularly preferably both M and Q comprising an amino group -NH₂, is preferably hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 10 kD and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 10 kD and a DS of about 0.7. Also possible are or hydroxethyl starches having mean molecular weight of about 12 kD and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 12 kD and a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 18 kD and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 18 kD and a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 50 kD and a DS of about 0.4 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 50 kD and a DS of about 0.7 or hydroxethyl starch having a mean molecular weight of about 100 kD and a DS of about 0.7.

In case both M and Q are an amino group -NH₂, M and Q may be separated by any suitable spacer. Among others, the spacer may be an optionally substituted, linear, branched and/or cyclic hydrocarbon residue. Generally, the hydrocarbon residue has from 1 to 60, preferably from 1 to 40, more preferably from 1 to 20, more preferably from 2 to 10, more preferably from 2 to 6 and especially preferably from 2 to 4 carbon atoms. If heteroatoms are present, the separating group comprises generally from 1 to 20, preferably from 1 to 8 and especially preferably from 1 to 4 heteroatoms. The hydrocarbon residue may comprise an optionally branched alkyl chain or an aryl group or a cycloalkyl group having, e.g.,

25

from 5 to 7 carbon atoms, or be an aralkyl group, an alkaryl group where the alkyl part may be a linear and/or cyclic alkyl group. According to an even more preferred embodiment, the hydrocarbon residue is an alkyl chain of from 1 to 20, preferably from 2 to 10, more preferably from 2 to 6, and especially preferably from 2 to 4 carbon atoms.

5

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with 1,4-diaminobutane, 1,3-diaminopropane or 1,2-diaminoethane to give a polymer derivative.

- 10 The reaction of the at least bifunctional compound comprising M and Q with the polymer is preferably carried out at a temperature of from 0 to 100 °C, more preferably of from 4 to 80 °C and especially preferably of from 20 to 80 °C; the reaction time preferably ranges of from 4 h to 7 d, more preferably of from 10 h to 5 d and especially preferably of from 17 to 4 h. The molar ratio of at least bifunctional compound: polymer is preferably in the range
15 of from 10 to 200, especially from 50 to 100.

As solvent for the reaction of the at least bifunctional compound with the polymer, at least one aprotic solvent, particularly preferably an anhydrous aprotic solvent having a water content of not more than 0.5 percent by weight, preferably of not more than 0.1 percent by
20 weight is preferred. Suitable solvents are, among others, dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), N-methyl pyrrolidone, dimethyl acetamide (DMA), dimethyl formamide (DMF) and mixtures of two or more thereof.

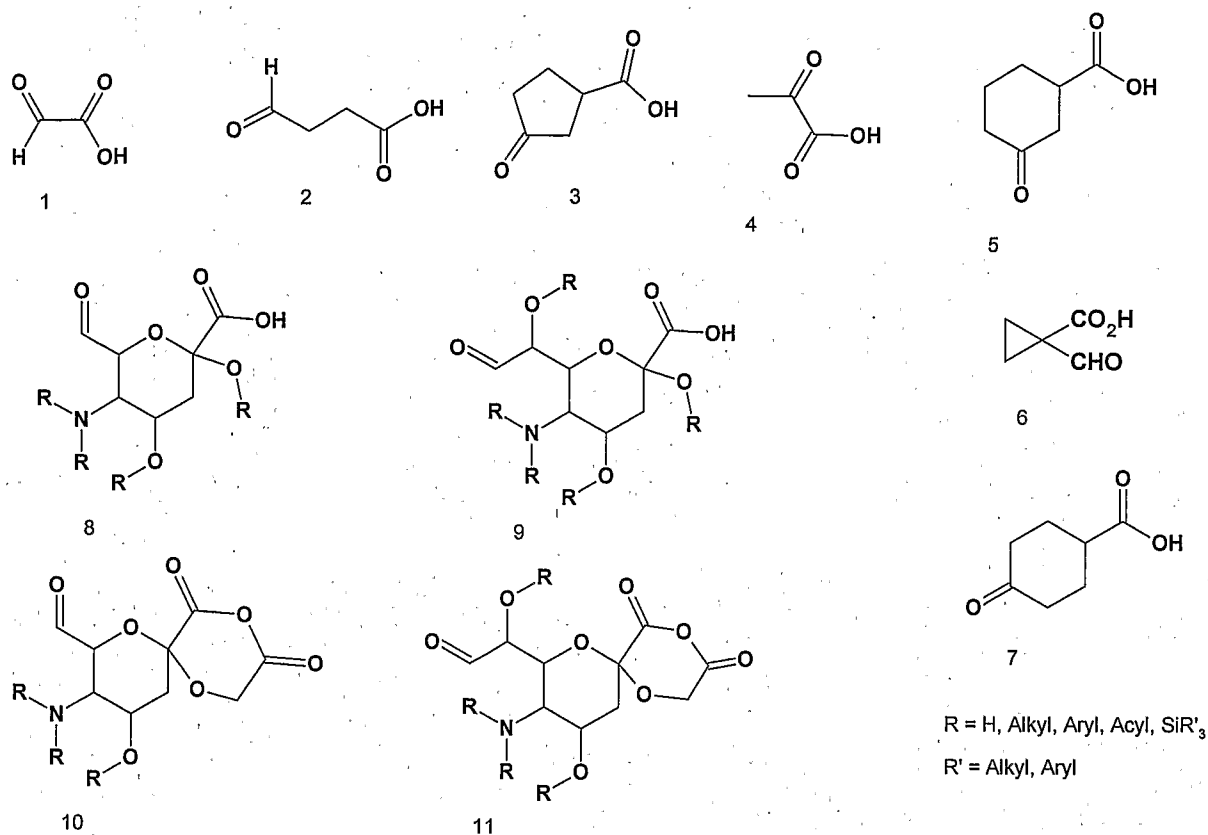
As solvent for the reaction of the at least bifunctional compound with the polymer, also an
25 aqueous medium may be used.

According to a preferred embodiment, the polymer derivative comprising the polymer and the at least bifunctional compound is chemically modified at the free functional group Q to give a polymer derivative comprising an aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group. According to this embodiment, it is preferred to react the polymer derivative with at
30 least one at least bifunctional compound which comprises a functional group capable of being reacted with the functional group Q and an aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group.

As at least bifunctional compound, each compound is suitable which has an aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group and at least one functional group which is capable of forming a linkage with the functional group Q of the polymer derivative. The at least one functional group is selected from the same pool of functional groups as Q and is
5 chosen to be able to be reacted with Q. In the preferred case that Q is an amino group -NH₂, or a derivative of the amino group comprising the structure unit -NH- such as aminoalkyl groups, aminoaryl group, aminoalkyl groups, or alkylamino groups it is preferred to employ a compound having, apart from the aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group, at least one carboxy group or at least one reactive carboxy group,
10 preferably one carboxy group or one reactive carboxy group. The aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group and the carboxy group or the reactive carboxy group may be separated by any suitable spacer. Among others, the spacer may be an optionally substituted, linear, branched and/or cyclic hydrocarbon residue. Generally, the hydrocarbon residue has from 1 to 60, preferably from 1 to 40, more preferably from 1 to
15 20, more preferably from 2 to 10, more preferably from 2 to 6 and especially preferably from 2 to 4 carbon atoms. If heteroatoms are present, the separating group comprises generally from 1 to 20, preferably from 1 to 8 and especially preferably from 1 to 4 heteroatoms. The hydrocarbon residue may comprise an optionally branched alkyl chain or an aryl group or a cycloalkyl group having, e.g., from 5 to 7 carbon atoms, or be an alkyl
20 group, an alkyl group where the alkyl part may be a linear and/or cyclic alkyl group.

According to a preferred embodiment, the hydrocarbon residue is an alkyl group having 2 to 6 and preferably 2 to 4 carbon atoms. It is also possible that no carbon atom is present between the aldehyde or keto group and the carboxy group. Alternatively, the hydrocarbon
25 residue can be a substituted or unsubstituted cyclic hydrocarbon group having 3 to 11 carbon atoms, preferably, 3 to 6 or 3 to 5 carbon atoms. When the cyclic hydrocarbon group is substituted, the substituent can be selected from the group consisting of substituted or unsubstituted amino or alkoxy groups. If present, the number of substituents is preferably 1 to 3. Further, the alkyl and/or cyclic hydrocarbon group can contain one or
30 more heteroatoms, such as O or S, in particular O. In this case, preferably 1 to 3, in particular 1 or 2 heteroatoms are present. Preferred compounds in this context are selected from the following group of compounds.

48



According to an even more preferred embodiment, the hydrocarbon residue is an aryl residue having 5 to 7 and preferably 6 carbon atoms. Most preferably, the hydrocarbon residue is the benzene residue. According to this preferred embodiment, the carboxy group and the aldehyde group may be located at the benzene ring in 1,4-position, 1,3-position or 1,2-position, the 1,4-position being preferred.

- As reactive carboxy group, a reactive ester, isothiocyanates or isocyanate may be mentioned. Preferred reactive esters are derived from N-hydroxy succinimides such as N-hydroxy succinimide or Sulfo-N-hydroxy succinimide, suitably substituted phenols such as p-nitrophenol, o,p-dinitrophenol, o,o'-dinitrophenol, trichlorophenol such as 2,4,6-trichlorophenol or 2,4,5-trichlorophenol, trifluorophenol such as 2,4,6-trifluorophenol or 2,4,5-trifluorophenol, pentachlorophenol, pentafluorophenol, or hydroxyazoles such as hydroxy benzotriazole. Especially preferred are N-hydroxy succinimides, with N-hydroxy succinimide and Sulfo-N-hydroxy succinimide being especially preferred. All alcohols may be employed alone or as suitable combination of two or more thereof. As reactive esters, pentafluorophenyl ester and N-hydroxy succinimide ester are especially preferred.

According to a specific embodiment, the functional group which is capable of forming a chemical linkage with the functional group Q, Q preferably being NH_2 or a derivative of the amino group comprising the structure unit $-\text{NH}-$ such as aminoalkyl groups, aminoaryl group, aminoaralkyl groups, or alkaryl amino groups, in particular being NH_2 , is a reactive
5 carboxy group.

In this case, the functional group which is capable of forming a chemical linkage with the functional group Q and which is a carboxy group, is suitably reacted to obtain a reactive carboxy group as described hereinabove. Therefore, it is preferred to subject the at least
10 one at least bifunctional compound which comprises a carboxy group and an aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group, to a reaction wherein the carboxy group is transformed into a reactive carboxy group, and the resulting at least bifunctional compound is purified and reacted with functional group Q of the polymer derivative.

15 Specific examples of the at least bifunctional compound comprising a carboxy group which may be reacted to obtain a reactive carboxy group are the compounds 1 to 11 of the list hereinabove. In this context, the term "carboxy group" also relates to a lacton and an internal anhydride of a dicarboxylic acid compound.

20 Thus, according to a preferred embodiment, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer derivative comprising Q, Q being an amino group $-\text{NH}_2$, or a derivative of the amino group comprising the structure unit $-\text{NH}-$ such as aminoalkyl groups, aminoaryl group, aminoaralkyl groups, or alkaryl aminogroups, is further reacted with formylbenzoic acid.

25 According to another embodiment, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer derivative comprising Q, Q being an amino group, is further reacted with formylbenzoic acid pentafluorophenyl ester.

30 According to yet another embodiment, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer derivative comprising Q, Q being an amino group, is further reacted with formylbenzoic acid N-hydroxysuccinimide ester.

According to yet another embodiment, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer derivative comprising Q, Q being an amino group, is further reacted with 4-(4-formyl-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)butyric acid.

5 According to another preferred embodiment, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with a bifunctional compound which is a biocompatible compound selected from the group consisting of alpha-keto carboxylic acids, sialic acids or derivatives thereof and pyridoxal phosphate.

10 As regards alpha-keto carboxylic acids, those are preferably alpha-keto carboxylic acids derived from amino acids and can in most instances also be found in the human body. Preferred alpha-keto carboxylic acids derived from amino acids are selected from the group consisting of keto-valine, keto-leucine, keto-isoleucine and keto-alanine. The carboxy group of the alpha-keto carboxylic acids is reacted with group Q of the polymer
15 being an amino group. Therewith an amido group is formed. The remaining free keto group of the alpha-keto carboxylic acid may then be reacted with a functional group of the protein, in particular an amino group. Therewith an imino group is formed which may be hydrogenated.

20 Accordingly, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with an alpha-keto carboxylic acid.

As regards sialic acids or derivatives thereof those are preferably biocompatible, in particular they are sugars found in the human body, which are N- and/or O-acetylated. In a
25 preferred embodiment, the sialic acids are N-acetyl neuramic acids. These compounds show a desired rigidity because of the pyranose structure in order to fulfill the function as a spacer. On the other hand, it may be possible to introduce an aldehyde group into these compounds through selective oxidation. Sialic acids are found in the human body e.g. as terminal monosaccharides in glycan chains of glycosylated proteins.

30

In a preferred embodiment, the sialic acid may be selectively oxidized to an aldehyde group.

Methods to selectively oxidize sialic acids are known in the art, e.g. from L.W. Jaques, B.F. Riesco, W. Weltner, Carbohydrate Research, 83 (1980), 21 – 32 and T. Masuda, S. Shibuya, M. Arai, S. Yoshida, T. Tomozawa, A. Ohno, M. Yamashita, T. Honda, Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters, 13 (2003), 669 - 673. Preferably the oxidation
5 of the sialic acid may be conducted prior to the reaction with amino group of the polymer.

The optionally oxidized sialic acid, may then be reacted via its carboxylic acid group with the amino group of the polymer.

10 The resulting compounds contain an aldehyde group which can then further be reacted by reductive amination with an amino group of a protein.

Accordingly, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with an optionally oxidized sialic acid.

15

As regards pyridoxal phosphate (PyP), this is a highly biocompatible bifunctional compound and is also called vitamine B6. PyP is a co-enzyme which participates in transaminations, decarboxylations, racemizations, and numerous modifications of amino acid side chains. All PyP requiring enzymes act via the formation of a Schiff's base
20 between the amino acid and the co-enzyme.

20

The phosphate group of the PyP may be reacted with the amino group of the polymer, preferably hydroxyalkyl starch, in particular hydroxyethyl starch, forming a phosphoramidate. The aldehyde group of PyP may then be reacted with the amino group of a
25 protein, forming a Schiff's base, which may then be reduced. In a preferred embodiment, the structure of the conjugate is HES-NH-P(O)₂-O-(pyridoxal)-CH-NH-protein.

25

In case of PyP, the functional group of the polymer is preferably introduced into the polymer by use of a di-amino compound as described above.

30

Accordingly, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with pyridoxal phosphate.

As solvent for the reaction of the polymer derivative comprising an amino group and, e.g., formylbenzoic acid, at least one aprotic solvent or at least one polar solvent is preferred. Suitable solvents are, among others, water, dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), N-methyl pyrrolidone, dimethyl acetamide (DMA), dimethyl formamide (DMF) and mixtures of two or more thereof.

As solvent for the reaction of the polymer derivative comprising an amino group and the at least bifunctional compound comprising a carboxy group, it is also possible to use an aqueous medium. The term "aqueous medium" as used in this context of the present invention relates to a solvent or a mixture of solvents comprising water in the range of from at least 10 % per weight or at least 20 % per weight or at least 30 % per weight or at least 40 % per weight or at least 50 % per weight or at least 60 % per weight or at least 70 % per weight or at least 80 % per weight or at least 90 % per weight or up to 100 % per weight, based on the weight of the solvents involved.

The reaction is preferably carried out at a temperature of from 0 to 40 °C, more preferably of from 0 to 25 °C and especially preferably of from 15 to 25 °C for a reaction time preferably of from 0.5 to 24 h and especially preferably of from 1 to 17 h.

According to a preferred embodiment, the reaction is carried out in the presence of an activating agent. Suitable activating agents are, among others, carbodiimides such as diisopropyl carbodiimide (DIC), dicyclohexyl carbodiimides (DCC), 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl) carbodiimide (EDC), with diisopropyl carbodiimide (DIC) being especially preferred.

The resulting polymer derivative may be purified from the reaction mixture by at least one suitable method. If necessary, the polymer derivative may be precipitated prior to the isolation by at least one suitable method.

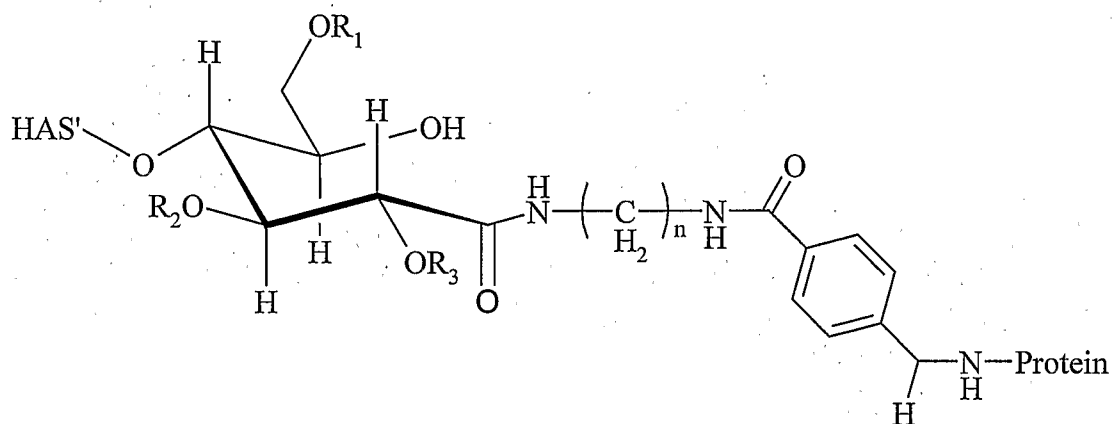
If the polymer derivative is precipitated first, it is possible, e.g., to contact the reaction mixture with at least one solvent or solvent mixture other than the solvent or solvent mixture present in the reaction mixture at suitable temperatures. According to a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention where an aqueous medium, preferably water is used as solvent, the reaction mixture is contacted with 2-propanol or

with an mixture of acetone and ethanol, preferably a 1:1 mixture (v/v), indicating equal volumes of said compounds, at a temperature, preferably in the range of from -20 to +50 °C and especially preferably in the range of from -20 to 25 °C.

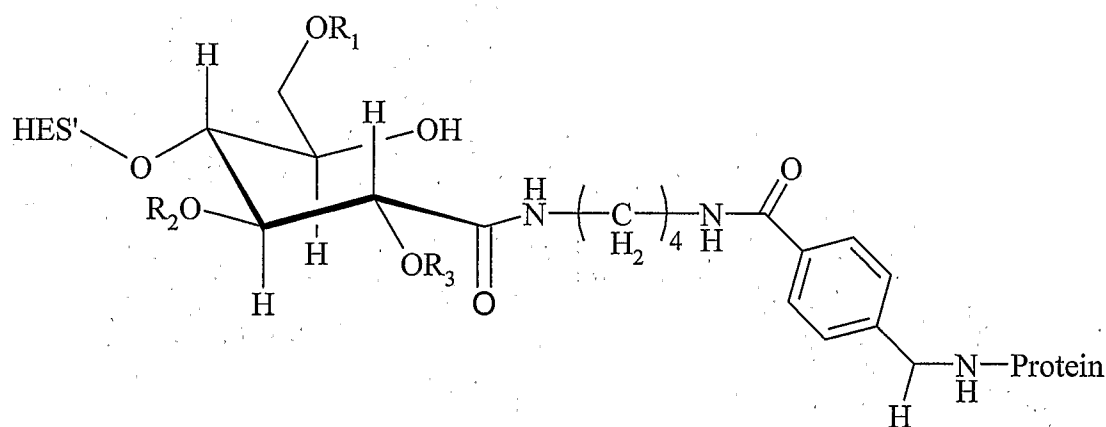
- 5 Isolation of the polymer derivative may be carried out by a suitable process which may comprise one or more steps. According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the polymer derivative is first separated off the reaction mixture or the mixture of the reaction mixture with, e.g., aqueous 2-propanol mixture, by a suitable method such as centrifugation or filtration. In a second step, the separated polymer derivative may be
10 subjected to a further treatment such as an after-treatment like dialysis, centrifugal filtration or pressure filtration, ion exchange chromatography, reversed phase chromatography, HPLC, MPLC, gel filtration and/or lyophilisation. According to an even more preferred embodiment, the separated polymer derivative is first dialysed, preferably against water, and then lyophilized until the solvent content of the reaction product is
15 sufficiently low according to the desired specifications of the product. Lyophilisation may be carried out at temperature of from 20 to 35 °C, preferably of from 20 to 30 °C.

- The resulting polymer derivative with the aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group is subsequently reacted with an amino group of the protein via reductive amination.
20 As to the coupling of at least one amino group of the protein with at least one aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group of the polymer by reductive amination, reference is made to the detailed disclosure above concerning the specific reaction parameters of the reductive amination reaction such as pH or temperature. According to an especially preferred embodiment of the present invention, according to which G-CSF is used as
25 protein, the reductive amination is carried out at a temperature of from 0 to 10 °C such as from 1 to 8 °C or from 2 to 6 °C such as about 4 °C at a pH of about 4.5 to 5.5 such as about 5.0. The reaction time is about 10 to 20 h such as from 12 to 19 h or from 14 to 18 h such as about 17 h or about 20 to 30 h such as about 24 h. According to especially preferred embodiments of the present invention, according to which rhIL 2, rhIL 3, rhIFN
30 alpha, rhIFN beta, rhEPO, rhAT III, , BSA, Myoglobin and SOD are used as proteins, the reductive amination is preferably carried out at a temperature of from 0 to 5 °C such as about 4 °C at a pH of about 4.5 to 5.5 such as about 5.0 and for a reaction time of about 20 to 30 h such as about 24 h.

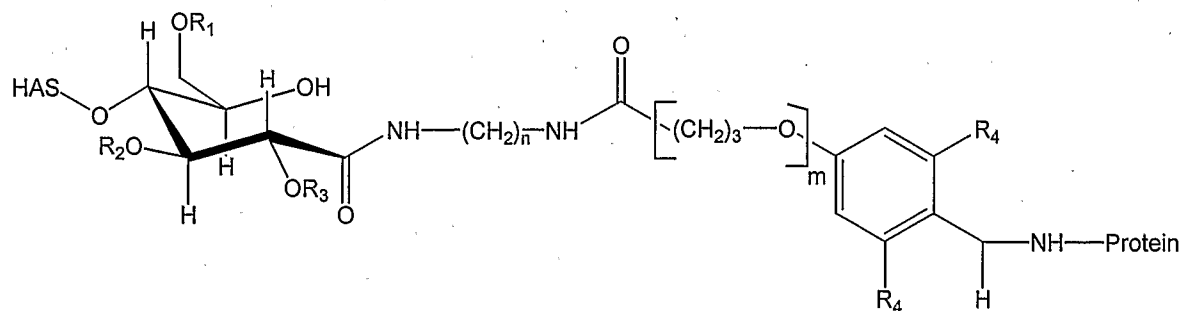
Thus, according to the above-mentioned preferred embodiments, the present invention also relates, in case the polymer was reacted via its oxidized reducing end, to a conjugate according to the formula



- According to an especially preferred embodiment, the polymer is hydroxyethyl starch, i.e. HAS' is HES', and $n = 2, 3$, or 4 , most preferably 4 , as described above. Therefore, in case the polymer was reacted via its oxidized reducing end, the present invention also relates to a conjugate according to the formula



According to another preferred embodiment, the present invention also relates, in case the polymer was reacted via its oxidized reducing end, to a conjugate according to the formula



wherein $n = 2, 3$, or 4 , R_4 being independently hydrogen or a methoxy group, and $m = 0$ in case R_4 is hydrogen and $m = 1$ in case R_4 is methoxy, HAS preferably being HES'.

In each of the formulae above, the nitrogen attached to the protein derives from the amino group of the protein the polymer derivative is linked to via the aldehyde group.

5 With respect to the above-mentioned embodiments according to which the functional groups M and Q comprise an amino group -NH_2 , it is also possible that M is an amino group -NH_2 and Q comprises a beta hydroxy amino group $\text{-CH(OH)-CH}_2\text{-NH}_2$ and preferably is a beta hydroxy amino group.

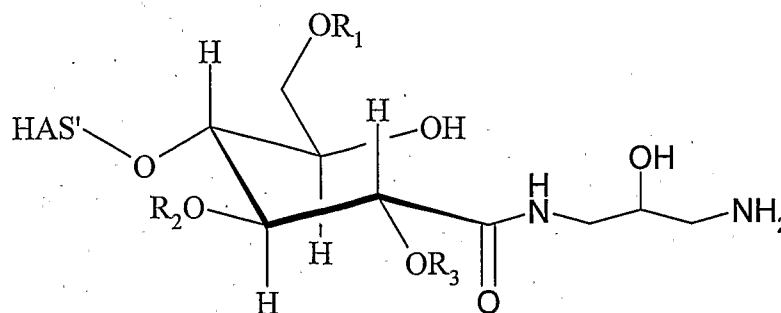
10 Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the amino group Q of the compound comprising two amino groups M and Q, is a beta hydroxy amino group $\text{-CH(OH)-CH}_2\text{-NH}_2$.

In this case, M and Q may be separated by any suitable spacer. Among others, the spacer
15 may be an optionally substituted, linear, branched and/or cyclic hydrocarbon residue. Generally, the hydrocarbon residue has from 1 to 60, preferably from 1 to 40, more preferably from 1 to 20, more preferably from 2 to 10, more preferably from 1 to 6 and especially preferably from 1 to 2 carbon atoms. If heteroatoms are present, the separating group comprises generally from 1 to 20, preferably from 1 to 8 and especially preferably
20 from 1 to 4 heteroatoms. The hydrocarbon residue may comprise an optionally branched alkyl chain or an aryl group or a cycloalkyl group having, e.g., from 5 to 7 carbon atoms, or be an aralkyl group, an alkaryl group where the alkyl part may be a linear and/or cyclic alkyl group. According to an even more preferred embodiment, the hydrocarbon residue is an alkyl chain of from 1 to 20, preferably from 1 to 10, more preferably from 1 to 6, more
25 preferably from 1 to 4 carbon atoms and especially preferably from 1 to 2 carbon atoms. Still more preferably, M and Q are separated by a methylene group.

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with 1,3-diamino-2-hydroxypropane.

30

In case the polymer is reacted via its oxidized reducing end, a polymer derivative according to the formula results



especially preferably with HAS' = HES'

The reaction of the at least bifunctional compound comprising M and Q, particularly preferably 1,3-diamino-2-hydroxypropane, with the polymer is preferably carried out at a temperature of from 40 to 120 °C, more preferably of from 40 to 90 °C and especially preferably of from 60 to 80 °C. The reaction time preferably ranges from 17 to 168 h, more preferably from 17 to 96 h and especially preferably from 48 to 96 h. The molar ratio of at least bifunctional compound: polymer is preferably in the range of from 200:1 to 10:1, specially from 50:1 to 100:1.

As solvent for the reaction of the at least bifunctional compound with the polymer, at least one aprotic solvent, preferably an anhydrous aprotic solvent having a water content of not more than 0.5 percent by weight, preferably of not more than 0.1 percent by weight is preferred. Suitable solvents are, among others, dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), N-methyl pyrrolidone, dimethyl acetamide (DMA), dimethyl formamide (DMF) and mixtures of two or more thereof.

The beta hydroxy amino group Q of the polymer derivative generally may be reacted with an at least bifunctional compound comprising at least one functional group capable of being reacted with Q and further comprising at least one functional group being an aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group or a functional group capable of being modified to give an aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group. According to another embodiment of the present invention, the beta hydroxy amino group is directly chemically modified to give an aldehyde group by chemical oxidation.

This oxidation may be carried with all suitable oxidation agents which are capable of converting the beta hydroxy amino group to an aldehyde group. Preferred oxidation

reagents are periodates such as alkaline metal periodates. Especially preferred is sodium periodate which is preferably employed as aqueous solution. This solution has a preferred iodate concentration of from 1 to 50 mM, more preferably from 1 to 25 mM and especially preferably of from 1 to 10 mM. Oxidation is carried out at a temperature of from 0 to 40 °C, preferably from 0 to 25 °C and especially preferably from 4 to 20 °C.

The resulting polymer derivative may be purified from the reaction mixture by at least one suitable method. If necessary, the polymer derivative may be precipitated prior to the isolation by at least one suitable method.

10

If the polymer derivative is precipitated first, it is possible, e.g., to contact the reaction mixture with at least one solvent or solvent mixture other than the solvent or solvent mixture present in the reaction mixture at suitable temperatures. According to a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention where an aqueous medium, preferably water is used as solvent, the reaction mixture is contacted with 2-propanol or with a mixture of acetone and ethanol, preferably a 1:1 mixture (v/v), indicating equal volumes of said compounds, at a temperature, preferably in the range of from -20 to +50 °C and especially preferably in the range of from -20 to 25 °C.

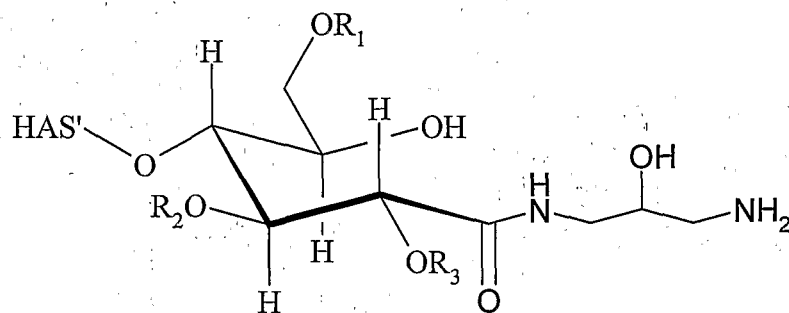
20

Isolation of the polymer derivative may be carried out by a suitable process which may comprise one or more steps. According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the polymer derivative is first separated off the reaction mixture or the mixture of the reaction mixture with, e.g., aqueous 2-propanol mixture, by a suitable method such as centrifugation or filtration. In a second step, the separated polymer derivative may be subjected to a further treatment such as an after-treatment like dialysis, centrifugal filtration or pressure filtration, ion exchange chromatography, reversed phase chromatography, HPLC, MPLC, gel filtration and/or lyophilisation. According to an even more preferred embodiment, the separated polymer derivative is first dialysed, preferably against water, and then lyophilized until the solvent content of the reaction product is sufficiently low according to the desired specifications of the product. Lyophilisation may be carried out at temperature of from 20 to 35 °C, preferably of from 20 to 30 °C.

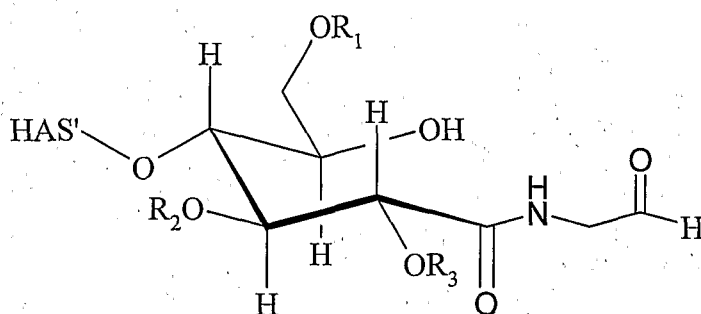
30

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the oxidation of the beta hydroxy amino group Q is carried out using a periodate.

- 5 Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method of producing a conjugate, wherein, in case the polymer was employed with oxidized reducing end, a polymer derivative having a beta hydroxy amino group, especially preferably



and particularly with $HAS' = HES'$, is oxidized, preferably with a periodate, to a polymer derivative having an aldehyde group, especially preferably

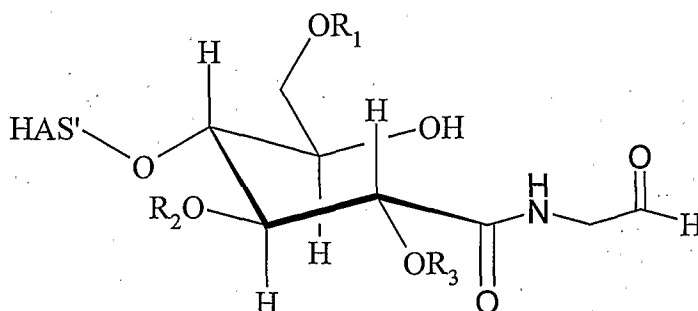


- 10 and particularly with $HAS' = HES'$.

According to the present invention, it is also possible to react the compound comprising an 1-amino 2-hydroxy structure depicted above with an at least bifunctional compound comprising a carboxy group or a reactive carboxy group and an aldehyde, keto or acetal group described hereinabove to obtain a polymer derivative which can be subjected to reductive amination with an amino group of the protein.

The resulting polymer derivative with the aldehyde group A is subsequently reacted with the protein. Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method of producing a conjugate, said method comprising reacting a polymer derivative having a beta hydroxy

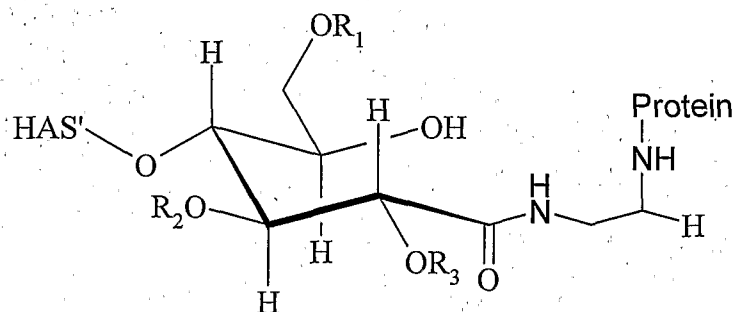
amino group, in case the polymer was employed with oxidized reducing end especially preferably according to the formula



and particularly with HAS' = HES', with an amino group of the protein.

- 5 The resulting polymer derivative with the aldehyde group is subsequently reacted with an amino group of the protein via reductive amination. As to the coupling of at least one amino group of the protein with at least one aldehyde group of the polymer by reductive amination, reference is made to the detailed disclosure above.

- 10 Thus, according to the above-mentioned preferred embodiment, the present invention also relates to a conjugate according to the formula



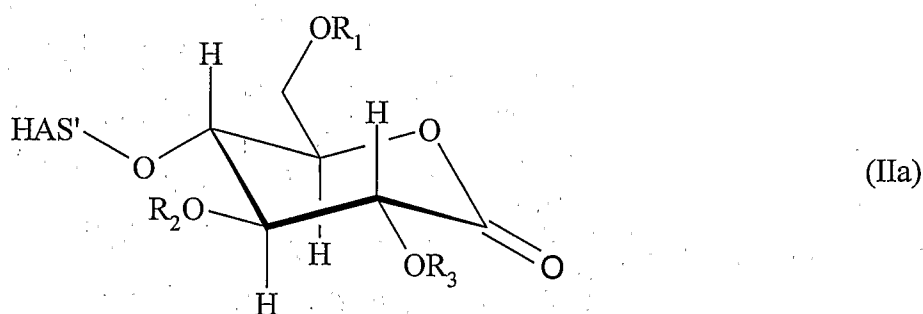
particularly with HAS' = HES', in case the polymer was employed with oxidized reducing end. In the formula above, the nitrogen attached to the protein derives from the amino group of the protein the polymer derivative is linked to via the aldehyde group.

15

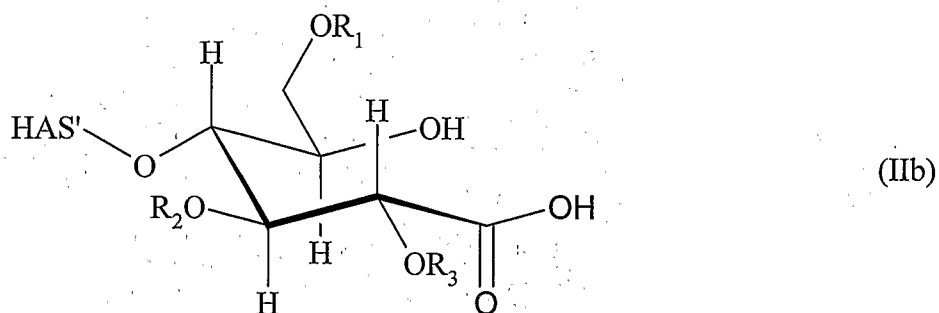
- According to a further embodiment of the present invention, the polymer is first reacted with a suitable compound to give a first polymer derivative comprising at least one reactive carboxy group. This first polymer derivative is then reacted with a further, at least bifunctional compound wherein at least one functional group of this further compound is reacted with at least one reactive carboxy group of the polymer derivative and at least one other functional group of the further compound is an aldehyde group or keto group or
- 20

- hemiacetal group or is a functional group which is chemically modified to give an aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group, and wherein the resulting polymer derivative comprising said aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group is reacted via reductive amination, as described above, with at least one amino group of the protein. It is also possible to alter the sequence of reacting the respective compounds with each other.

According to a first alternative of said further embodiment, the polymer comprising at least one reactive carboxy group is prepared by selectively oxidizing the polymer at its reducing end and subsequently reacting the oxidized polymer being a lactone



- and/or a carboxylic acid



or a suitable salt of the carboxylic acid such as alkali metal salt, preferably as sodium and/or potassium salt, and HAS' preferably being HES', with a suitable compound to give the polymer comprising at least one reactive carboxy group.

- Oxidation of the polymer, preferably hydroxyethyl starch, may be carried out according to each method or combination of methods which result in compounds having the above-mentioned structures (IIa) and/or (IIb).

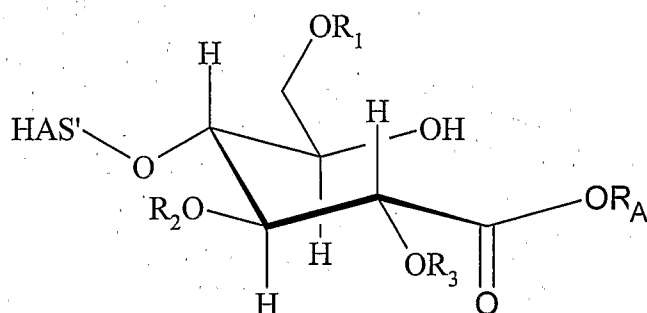
- Although the oxidation may be carried out according to all suitable method or methods resulting in the oxidized reducing end of hydroxyalkyl starch, it is preferably carried out

using an alkaline iodine solution as described, e.g., in DE 196 28 705 A1 the respective contents of which (example A, column 9, lines 6 to 24) is incorporated herein by reference.

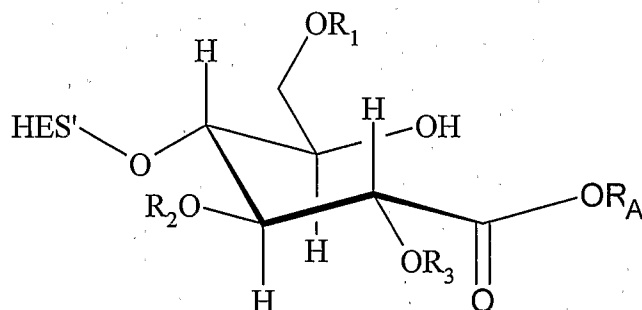
Introducing the reactive carboxy group into the polymer which is selectively oxidized at its
 5 reducing end may be carried out by all conceivable methods and all suitable compounds.

According to a specific method of the present invention, the polymer which is selectively oxidized at its reducing end is reacted at the oxidized reducing end with at least one alcohol, preferably with at least one acidic alcohol such as acidic alcohols having a pK_A
 10 value in the range of from 6 to 12 or of from 7 to 11 at 25 °C. The molecular weight of the acidic alcohol may be in the range of from 80 to 500 g/mole, such as of from 90 to 300 g/mole or of from 100 to 200 g/mole.

Suitable acidic alcohols are all alcohols $H-O-R_A$ having an acidic proton and are capable of
 15 being with reacted with the oxidized polymer to give the respective reactive polymer ester, preferably according to the formula



still more preferably according to formula

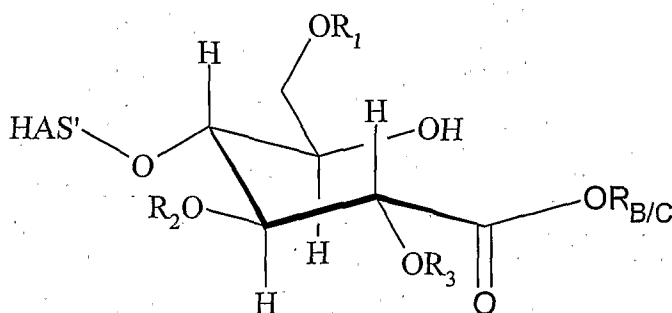


Preferred alcohols are N-hydroxy succinimides such as N-hydroxy succinimide or Sulfo-N-hydroxy succinimide, suitably substituted phenols such as p-nitrophenol, o,p-dinitrophenol,
 20 o,o'-dinitrophenol, trichlorophenol such as 2,4,6-trichlorophenol or 2,4,5-trichlorophenol, trifluorophenol such as 2,4,6-trifluorophenol or 2,4,5-trifluorophenol, pentachlorophenol,

pentafluorophenol, or hydroxyazoles such as hydroxy benzotriazole. Especially preferred are N-hydroxy succinimides, with N-hydroxysuccinimide and Sulfo-N-hydroxysuccinimide being especially preferred. All alcohols may be employed alone or as suitable combination of two or more thereof. In the context of the present invention, it is also possible to employ a compound which releases the respective alcohol, e.g. by adding diesters of carbonic acid.

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method as described above, wherein the polymer which is selectively oxidised at its reducing end is activated by reacting the oxidised polymer with an acidic alcohol, preferably with N-hydroxy succinimide and/or Sulfo-N-hydroxy succinimide.

According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the polymer which is selectively oxidized at its reducing end is reacted at the oxidized reducing end with at least one carbonic diester $R_B-O-(C=O)-O-R_C$, wherein R_B and R_C may be the same or different. Preferably, this method gives reactive polymers according to the formula



wherein HAS' is preferably HES'.

As suitable carbonic diester compounds, compounds may be employed whose alcohol components are independently N-hydroxy succinimides such as N-hydroxy succinimide or Sulfo-N-hydroxy succinimide, suitably substituted phenols such as p-nitrophenol, o,p-dinitrophenol, o,o'-dinitrophenol, trichlorophenol such as 2,4,6-trichlorophenol or 2,4,5-trichlorophenol, trifluorophenol such as 2,4,6-trifluorophenol or 2,4,5-trifluorophenol, pentachlorophenol, pentafluorophenol, or hydroxyazoles such as hydroxy benzotriazole. Especially preferred are N,N'-disuccinimidyl carbonate and Sulfo-N,N'-disuccinimidyl carbonate, with N,N'-disuccinimidyl carbonate being especially preferred.

Therefore, the present invention also relates a method as described above, wherein the polymer which is selectively oxidised at its reducing end is activated by reacting the oxidised polymer with N,N'-disuccinimidyl carbonate.

- 5 The acidic alcohol is reacted with the oxidized polymer or the salt of the oxidized polymer at a molar ratio of acidic alcohol : polymer preferably of from 5:1 to 50:1, more preferably of from 8:1 to 20:1, at a preferred reaction temperature of from 2 to 40 °C, more preferably of from 10 to 30 °C and especially preferably of from 15 to 25 °C. The reaction time is preferably in the range of from 1 to 10 h, more preferably of from 2 to 5 h, more preferably
10 of from 2 to 4 h and particularly of from 2 to 3 h.

- The carbonic diester compound is reacted with the oxidized polymer or the salt of the oxidized polymer at a molar ratio of diester compound : polymer generally of from 1:1 to 3:1, such as of from 1:1 to 1.5:1. The reaction time is generally in the range of from 0.1 to
15 12 h, like of from 0.2 to 6 h, or of from 0.5 to 2 h or of from 0.75 to 1.25 h.

- According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, reacting the oxidized polymer with acidic alcohol and/or carbonic diester is carried out in at least one aprotic solvent, such as in an anhydrous aprotic solvent having a water content of not more than
20 0.5 percent by weight, preferably of not more than 0.1 percent by weight. Suitable solvents are, among others, dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), N-methyl pyrrolidone, dimethyl acetamide (DMA), dimethyl formamide (DMF) and mixtures of two or more thereof. The reaction temperatures are preferably in the range of from 2 to 40 °C, more preferably of from 10 to 30 °C.

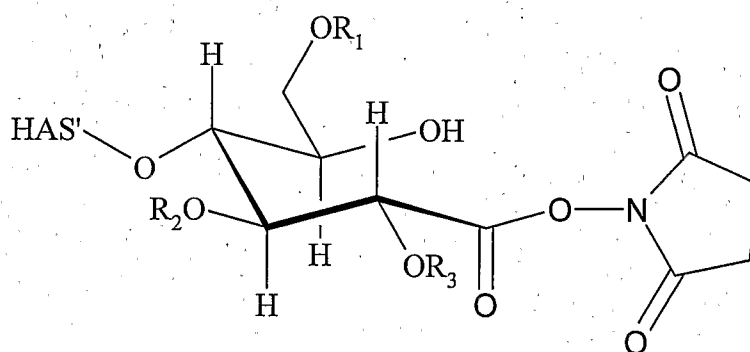
- 25 For reacting the oxidized polymer with the at least one acidic alcohol, at least one additional activating agent is employed.

- Suitable activating agents are, among others, carbonyldiimidazole, carbodiimides such as
30 diisopropyl carbodiimide (DIC), dicyclohexyl carbodiimides (DCC), 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl) carbodiimide (EDC), with dicyclohexyl carbodiimides (DCC) and 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl) carbodiimide (EDC) being especially preferred.

Therefore, the present invention also relates to the method as described above, where the polymer which is oxidized at its reducing end, is reacted with an acidic alcohol in the presence of an additional activating agent to give the reactive polymer ester.

- 5 According to one embodiment of the present invention, the reaction of the oxidized polymer with carbonic diester and/or acidic alcohol is carried out at a low base activity which may be determined by adding the reaction mixture to water with a volume ratio of water to reaction mixture of 10:1. Prior to the addition, the water which comprises essentially no buffer, has a pH value of 7 at 25 °C. After the addition of the reaction mixture and by measuring the pH value, the base activity of the reaction mixture is
 10 obtained, having a value of preferably not more than 9.0, more preferably of not more than 8.0 and especially preferably of not more than 7.5.

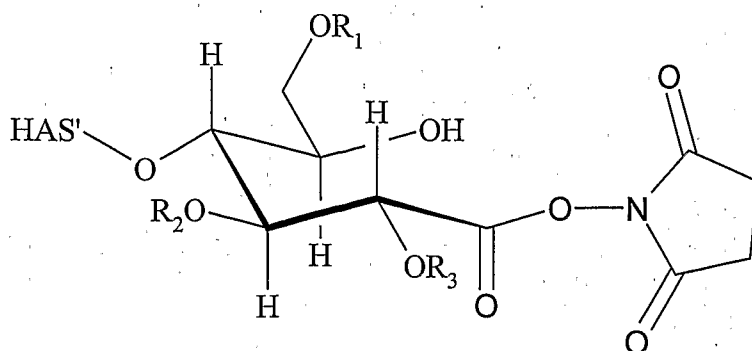
- According to another embodiment of the present invention, the oxidized polymer is reacted
 15 with N-hydroxy succinimide in dry DMA in the absence of water with EDC to selectively give the polymer N-hydroxy succinimide ester according to the formula



more preferably with HAS' being HES'.

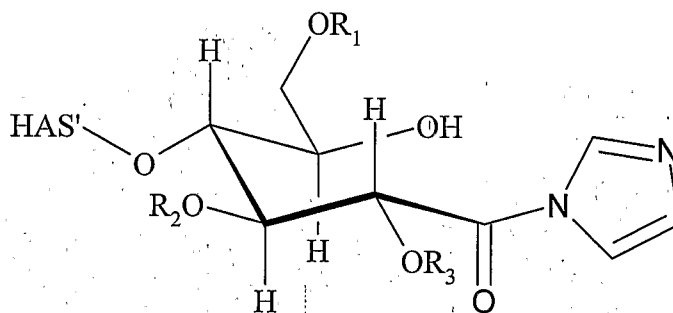
- Surprisingly, this reaction does not give by-products resulting from reactions of EDC with
 20 OH groups of HES, and the rearrangement reaction of the O-acyl isourea formed by EDC and the oxidized polymer to the respective N-acyl urea is surprisingly suppressed.

- According to another preferred embodiment of the present invention, the oxidized polymer is reacted with N,N'-disuccinimidyl carbonate in dry DMF in the absence of water and in
 25 the absence of an activating agent to selectively give the polymer N-hydroxy succinimide ester according to the formula



more preferably with HAS' being HES'.

- According to another embodiment of the present invention, the polymer which is selectively oxidized at its reducing end is reacted at the oxidized reducing end with an azolide such as carbonyldiimidazole or carbonyl dibenzimidazole to give a polymer having a reactive carboxy group. In the case of carbonyldiimidazole, a reactive imidazolide polymer derivative according to formula



results, wherein HAS' is preferably HES'.

- According to a second alternative of said further embodiment of the present invention regarding the introduction of at least one reactive carboxy group into the polymer, the reactive carboxy group is introduced into the polymer whose reducing end is not oxidized, by reacting at least one hydroxy group of the polymer with a carbonic diester.
- Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method and conjugates wherein the reactive carboxy group is introduced in the polymer whose reducing end is not oxidized, by reacting at least one hydroxy group of the polymer with at least one carbonic diester carbonic diester $R_B-O-(C=O)-O-R_C$, wherein R_B and R_C may be the same or different.

According to another embodiment of the present invention, the polymer whose reducing end is not oxidized, is reacted at at least one hydroxy group with an azolide such as carbonyldiimidazole, carbonyl-di-(1,2,4-triazole) or carbonyl dibenzimidazol to give a polymer having a reactive carboxy group.

5

As suitable carbonic diester compounds, compounds may be employed whose alcohol components are independently N-hydroxy succinimides such as N-hydroxy succinimide or Sulfo-N-hydroxy succinimide, suitably substituted phenols such as p-nitrophenol, o,p-dinitrophenol, o,o'-dinitrophenol, trichlorophenol such as 2,4,6-trichlorophenol or 2,4,5-trichlorophenol, trifluorophenol such as 2,4,6-trifluorophenol or 2,4,5-trifluorophenol, pentachlorophenol, pentafluorophenol, or hydroxyazoles such as hydroxy benzotriazole.

10

Especially preferred are symmetrical carbonic diester compounds, R_B and R_C thus being the same. The alcohol component of the carbonic diester is preferably selected from the group consisting of N-hydroxy succinimide, sulfonated N-hydroxy succinimide, N-hydroxy benzotriazole, and nitro- and halogen-substituted phenols. Among others, nitrophenol, dinitrophenol, trichlorophenol, trifluorophenol, pentachlorophenol, and pentafluorophenol are preferred. Especially preferred are N,N'-disuccinimidyl carbonate and Sulfo-N,N'-disuccinimidyl carbonate, with N,N'-disuccinimidyl carbonate being especially preferred.

15

20

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a hydroxyalkyl starch derivative, preferably a hydroxyethyl starch derivative, wherein at least one hydroxy group, preferably at least two hydroxy groups of said starch have been reacted with a carbonic diester compound to give the respective reactive ester.

25

According to one embodiment of the present invention, the reaction of the polymer whose reducing end is not oxidized, with the at least one carbonic diester compound is carried out at a temperature of from 2 to 40 °C, more preferably of from 10 to 30 °C and especially of from 15 to 25 °C. A preferred reaction time ranges from 0,5 to 5 h, more preferably from 1 to 3 h, and especially preferably from 2 to 3 h.

30

The molar ratio of carbonic diester compound : polymer depends on the degree of substitution of the polymer regarding the number of hydroxy groups reacted with carbonic

diester compound relative to the number of hydroxy groups present in the non-reacted polymer.

5 According to one embodiment of the present invention, the molar ratio of carbonic diester compound : anhydroglucose units of the polymer is in the range of from 1:2 to 1:1000, more preferably of from 1:3 to 1:100 and especially preferably of from 1:10 to 1:50, to give a degree of substitution in the range of from 0.5 to 0.001, preferably of from 0.33 to 0.01 and especially preferably of from 0.1 to 0.02

10 According to one embodiment of the present invention, reacting the polymer whose reducing end is not oxidized, with carbonic diester is carried out in at least one aprotic solvent, particularly preferably in an anhydrous aprotic solvent having a water content of not more than 0.5 percent by weight, preferably of not more than 0.1 percent by weight. Suitable solvents are, among others, dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), N-methyl pyrrolidone,
15 dimethyl acetamide (DMA), dimethyl formamide (DMF) and mixtures of two or more thereof.

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method as described above wherein the reaction of the at least one hydroxy group of the polymer whose reducing end is not
20 oxidised, with the carbonic diester to give a reactive carboxy group is carried out in an anhydrous aprotic polar solvent, the solvent preferably being dimethyl acetamide, dimethyl formamide or a mixture thereof.

The reactive polymer derivative comprising at least one reactive carboxy group, preferably
25 resulting from the reaction of the polymer with the acidic alcohol, the carbonate and/or the azolide, as described above, is further reacted with a further, at least bifunctional compound wherein at least one functional group F_1 of this further compound is reacted with at least one reactive carboxy group of the polymer derivative. As at least one functional group F_1 of the further compound no specific limitations exist given that a
30 reaction with the at least one reactive carboxy group of the polymer is possible. Preferred functional groups F_1 are, e.g., an amino group or a hydroxy group or a thio group or a carboxy group.

The further, at least bifunctional compound comprises at least one other functional group F_2 being an aldehyde group or a functional group F_2 being capable of being chemically modified to give an aldehyde group. The chemical modification may be, e.g., a reaction of the functional group F_2 with a functional group F_3 a further linker compound or an oxidation or a reduction of a suitable functional group F_2 .

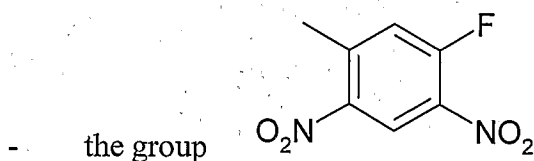
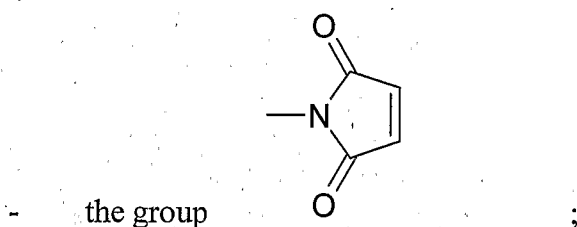
In case F_2 is reacted with a functional group F_3 of a further compound, the functional group F_2 may be selected from, among others,

- C-C-double bonds or C-C-triple bonds or aromatic C-C-bonds;
- the thio group or the hydroxy group;
- alkyl sulfonic acid hydrazide, aryl sulfonic acid hydrazide;
- 1,2-dioles;
- 1,2-aminoalcohols;
- 1,2 amino-thioalcohols;
- azides;
- the amino group $-NH_2$ or derivatives of the amino groups comprising the structure unit $-NH-$ such as aminoalkyl groups, aminoaryl group, aminoaralkyl groups, or alkarlyaminogroups;
- the hydroxylamino group $-O-NH_2$, or derivatives of the hydroxylamino group comprising the structure unit $-O-NH-$, such as hydroxylalkylamino groups, hydroxylarylamino groups, hydroxylaralkylamino groups, or hydroxalalkarylamino groups;
- alkoxyamino groups, aryloxyamino groups, aralkyloxyamino groups, or alkaryloxyamino groups, each comprising the structure unit $-NH-O-$;
- residues having a carbonyl group, $-Q-C(=G)-M$, wherein G is O or S, and M is, for example,
 - $-OH$ or $-SH$;
 - an alkoxy group, an aryloxy group, an aralkyloxy group, or an alkaryloxy group;
 - an alkylthio group, an arylthio group, an aralkylthio group, or an alkarylthio group;
 - an alkylcarbonyloxy group, an arylcarbonyloxy group, an aralkylcarbonyloxy group, an alkarylcarbonyloxy group;

- activated esters such as esters of hydroxylamines having imid structure such as N-hydroxysuccinimide or having a structure unit O-N where N is part of a heteroaryl compound or, with G = O and Q absent, such as aryloxy compounds with a substituted aryl residue such as pentafluorophenyl, paranitrophenyl or trichlorophenyl;

wherein Q is absent or NH or a heteroatom such as S or O;

- -NH-NH₂, or -NH-NH-;
- -NO₂;
- the nitril group;
- 10 - carbonyl groups such as the aldehyde group or the keto group;
- the carboxy group;
- the -N=C=O group or the -N=C=S group;
- vinyl halide groups such as the vinyl iodide or the vinyl bromide group or triflate;
- -C≡C-H;
- 15 - -(C=NH₂Cl)-OAlkyl
- groups -(C=O)-CH₂-Hal wherein Hal is Cl, Br, or I;
- -CH=CH-SO₂-;
- a disulfide group comprising the structure -S-S-;



wherein F₃ is a group capable of forming a chemical linkage with one of the above-mentioned groups and is preferably selected from the above-mentioned groups. Moreover, the second linker compound preferably has at least one aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group which is capable of being reacted with an amino group of the protein via reductive amination.

- 25 The functional group F₁ and the aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group of the at least bifunctional linking compound which is reacted with the polymer, and/or the functional groups F₁ and F₂ of the at least bifunctional linking compound which is reacted

with the polymer, and/or the functional group F_3 and the aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group of the further, at least bifunctional linking compound, may be independently separated by any suitable spacer. Among others, the spacer may be an optionally substituted, linear, branched and/or cyclic, aliphatic and/or aromatic hydrocarbon residue. Generally, the hydrocarbon residue has up to 60, preferably up to 40, more preferably up to 20, more preferably up to 10 carbon atoms. If heteroatoms are present, the separating group comprises generally from 1 to 20, preferably from 1 to 8, more preferably 1 to 6, more preferably 1 to 4 and especially preferably from 1 to 2 heteroatoms. As heteroatom, O is preferred. The hydrocarbon residue may comprise an optionally branched alkyl chain or an aryl group or a cycloalkyl group having, e.g., from 5 to 7 carbon atoms, or be an aralkyl group, an alkaryl group where the alkyl part may be a linear and/or cyclic alkyl group.

Examples of a compound with functional groups F_1 and F_2 are, e.g., optionally substituted diaminoalkane having from 2 to 20 carbon atoms, especially preferably 1,2-diaminoethane, 1,3-diaminopropane, and 1,4-diaminobutane. Preferred examples of a compound with functional groups F_3 and an aldehyde group or a keto group or a hemiacetal group are, e.g., formylbenzoic acid, 4-formylbenzoic acid pentafluorophenyl ester, 4-formylbenzoic acid-N-hydroxysuccinimide ester and 4-(4-formyl-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)butyric, or a biocompatible compound selected from the group consisting of alpha-keto carboxylic acids, neuraminic acids or derivatives thereof and pyridoxal phosphate

According to another preferred embodiment, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with a bifunctional compound which is a biocompatible compound selected from the group consisting of alpha-keto carboxylic acids, neuraminic or sialic acids or derivatives thereof and pyridoxal phosphate.

As regards alpha-keto carboxylic acids, those are preferably alpha-keto carboxylic acids derived from amino acids and can in most instances also be found in the human body. Preferred alpha-keto carboxylic acids derived from amino acids are selected from the group consisting of keto-valine, keto-leucine, keto-isoleucine and keto-alanine. The carboxy group of the alpha-keto carboxylic acids is reacted with group Q of the polymer being an amino group. Therewith an amido group is formed. The remaining free keto

group of the alpha-keto carboxylic acid may then be reacted with a functional group of the protein, in particular an amino group. Therewith an imino group is formed which may be hydrogenated.

- 5 Accordingly, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with an alpha-keto carboxylic acid.

As regards sialic acids or derivatives thereof those are preferably biocompatible, in particular they are sugars found in the human body, which are N- and/or O-acetylated. In a preferred embodiment, the sialic acids are N-acetyl neuramic acids. These compounds show a desired rigidity because of the pyranose structure in order to fulfill the function as a spacer. On the other hand, it may be possible to introduce an aldehyde group into these compounds through selective oxidation. Sialic acids are found in the human body e.g. as terminal monosaccharides in glycan chains of glycosylated proteins.

- 15 In a preferred embodiment, the sialic acid may be selectively oxidized to an aldehyde group.

Methods to selectively oxidize sialic acids are known in the art, e.g. from L.W. Jaques, B.F. Riesco, W. Weltner, Carbohydrate Research, 83 (1980), 21 – 32 and T. Masuda, S. Shibuya, M. Arai, S. Yoshida, T. Tomozawa, A. Ohno, M. Yamashita, T. Honda, Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters, 13 (2003), 669 - 673. Preferably the oxidation of the sialic acid may be conducted prior to the reaction with the amino group of the polymer.

- 25 The optionally oxidized sialic acid, may then be reacted via its carboxylic acid group with the amino group of the polymer.

The resulting compounds contain an aldehyde group which can then further be reacted by reductive amination with an amino group of a protein.

- 30 Accordingly, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with an optionally oxidized sialic acid.

As regards pyridoxal phosphate (PyP), this is a highly biocompatible bifunctional compound and is also called vitamin B6. PyP is a co-enzyme which participates in transaminations, decarboxylations, racemizations, and numerous modifications of amino acid side chains. All PyP requiring enzymes act via the formation of a Schiff's base
5 between the amino acid and the co-enzyme.

The phosphate group of the PyP may be reacted with the amino group of the polymer, preferably hydroxyalkyl starch, in particular hydroxyethyl starch, forming a phosphoramidate. The aldehyde group of PyP may then be reacted with the amino group of a
10 protein, forming a Schiff's base, which may then be reduced. In a preferred embodiment, the structure of the conjugate is HES-NH-P(O)₂-O-(pyridoxal)-CH-NH-protein.

In case of PyP, the functional group of the polymer is preferably introduced into the polymer by use of a di-amino compound as described above.

15 Accordingly, the present invention relates to a method and a conjugate as described above, wherein the polymer is reacted with pyridoxal phosphate.

Therefore, the present invention also relates to a method of producing a conjugate, said
20 method comprising reacting the polymer, preferably hydroxyethyl starch, at its optionally oxidized reducing end with a compound, selected from the group consisting of acidic alcohols, carbonic diesters and azolides, to give a polymer derivative comprising at least one reactive carboxy group, reacting said polymer derivative with at least one at least bifunctional compound to give a polymer derivative comprising an aldehyde group or a
25 keto group or a hemiacetal group or a functional group capable of being chemically modified to give an aldehyde group or a keto group or a hemiacetal group, optionally chemically modifying said functional group to give a polymer derivative comprising an aldehyde group or a keto group or a hemiacetal group, and reacting the polymer derivative comprising an aldehyde group or a keto group or a hemiacetal group with an amino group
30 of a protein via reductive amination.

Accordingly, the present invention also relates to a conjugate comprising a polymer, preferably hydroxyethyl starch, and a protein covalently linked to each other, obtainable by a method of producing a conjugate, said method comprising reacting the polymer, at its

optionally oxidized reducing end with a compound, selected from the group consisting of acidic alcohols, carbonic diesters and azolides, to give a polymer derivative comprising at least one reactive carboxy group, reacting said polymer derivative with at least one at least bifunctional compound to give a polymer derivative comprising an aldehyde group or a keto group or a hemiacetal group or a functional group capable of being chemically modified to give an aldehyde group or a keto group or a hemiacetal group, optionally chemically modifying said functional group to give a polymer derivative comprising an aldehyde group or a keto group or a hemiacetal group, and reacting the polymer derivative comprising an aldehyde group or a keto group or a hemiacetal group with an amino group of a protein via reductive amination.

A specific example of a compound having a functional group F_1 and a functional group F_2 which is oxidized to give an aldehyde group is, e.g., a compound having an amino group as F_1 and a beta hydroxy amino group as F_2 . An especially preferred example is 1,3-diamino-2-hydroxypropane. This oxidation may be carried with all suitable oxidation agents which are capable of converting the beta hydroxy amino group to an aldehyde group. Preferred oxidation reagents are periodates such as alkaline metal periodates. Especially preferred is sodium periodate which is preferably employed as aqueous solution. This solution has a preferred iodate concentration of from 1 to 50 mM, more preferably from 1 to 25 mM and especially preferably of from 1 to 10 mM. Oxidation is carried out at a temperature of from 0 to 40 °C, preferably from 0 to 25 °C and especially preferably from 4 to 20 °C.

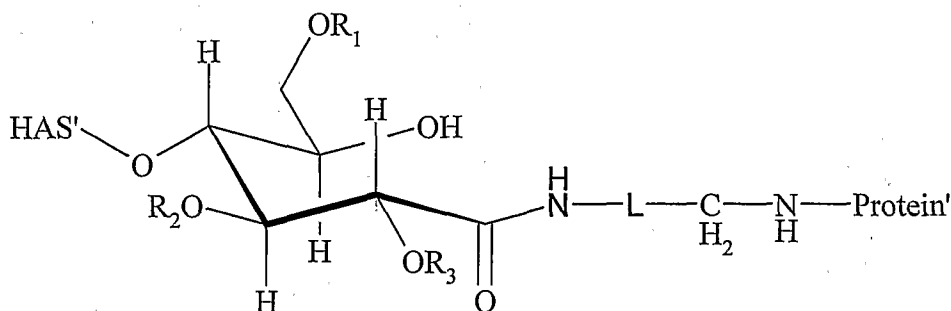
The resulting polymer derivative may be purified from the reaction mixture by at least one suitable method. If necessary, the polymer derivative may be precipitated prior to the isolation by at least one suitable method.

If the polymer derivative is precipitated first, it is possible, e.g., to contact the reaction mixture with at least one solvent or solvent mixture other than the solvent or solvent mixture present in the reaction mixture at suitable temperatures. According to a particularly preferred embodiment of the present invention where an aqueous medium, preferably water is used as solvent, the reaction mixture is contacted with 2-propanol or with a mixture of acetone and ethanol, preferably a 1:1 mixture (v/v), indicating equal volumes of said compounds, at a temperature, preferably in the range of from -20 to +50 °C and especially preferably in the range of from -20 to 25 °C.

Isolation of the polymer derivative may be carried out by a suitable process which may comprise one or more steps. According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the polymer derivative is first separated off the reaction mixture or the mixture of the reaction mixture with, e.g., aqueous 2-propanol mixture, by a suitable method such as centrifugation or filtration. In a second step, the separated polymer derivative may be subjected to a further treatment such as an after-treatment like dialysis, centrifugal filtration or pressure filtration, ion exchange chromatography, reversed phase chromatography, HPLC, MPLC, gel filtration and/or lyophilisation. According to an even more preferred embodiment, the separated polymer derivative is first dialysed, preferably against water, and then lyophilized until the solvent content of the reaction product is sufficiently low according to the desired specifications of the product. Lyophilisation may be carried out at temperature of from 20 to 35 °C, preferably of from 20 to 30 °C.

The present invention also relates to conjugate comprising hydroxyalkyl starch and a protein, wherein hydroxyalkyl starch is coupled with its oxidized reducing end via an amide linkage to a first crosslinking compound, said crosslinking compound being additionally linked via an amide linkage to a second crosslinking compound, said second crosslinking compound being linked via an azomethine and/or amino linkage to a protein, wherein the first crosslinking compound was preferably employed as an diamino functionalized compound and the second crosslinking compound was preferably employed as a carboxy and aldehyde or keto or hemiacetal, more preferably as a carboxy and aldehyde functionalized compound.

The present invention also relates to conjugate, comprising a protein and a polymer or a derivative thereof, wherein the polymer is a hydroxyalkyl starch (HAS), having a structure according to the formula

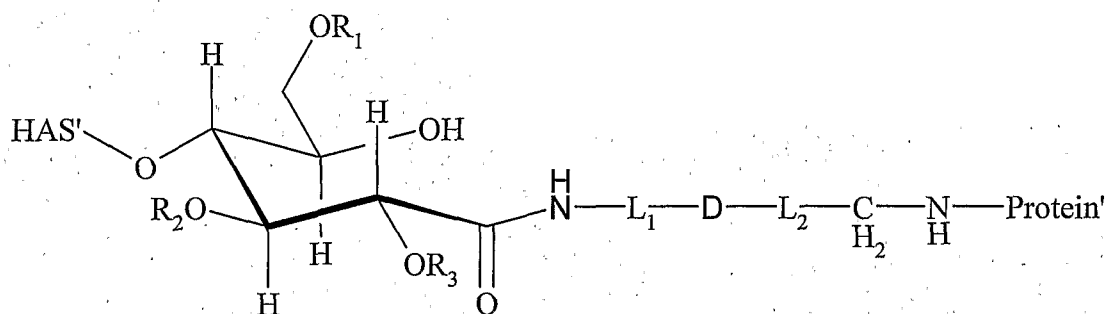


wherein R_1 , R_2 and R_3 are independently hydrogen or a hydroxyalkyl group, a hydroxyaryl group, a hydroxyaralkyl group or a hydroxyalkaryl group having of from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, preferably hydrogen or a hydroxyalkyl group, more preferably hydrogen or a hydroxyethyl group, and

- 5 wherein L is an optionally substituted, linear, branched and/or cyclic hydrocarbon residue, optionally comprising at least one heteroatom, having from 1 to 60 preferably from 1 to 40, more preferably from 1 to 20, more preferably from 1 to 10, more preferably from 1 to 6 more preferably from 1 to 2 carbon atoms and especially preferably 1 carbon atom, L being in particular CH_2 .

10

The present invention also relates to conjugate, comprising a protein and a polymer or a derivative thereof, wherein the polymer is a hydroxyalkyl starch (HAS), having a structure according to the formula



- 15 wherein R_1 , R_2 and R_3 are independently hydrogen or a hydroxyalkyl group, a hydroxyaryl group, a hydroxyaralkyl group or a hydroxyalkaryl group having of from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, preferably hydrogen or a hydroxyalkyl group, more preferably hydrogen or a hydroxyethyl group, and

- wherein L_1 and L_2 are independently an optionally substituted, linear, branched and/or
20 cyclic hydrocarbon residue, optionally comprising at least one heteroatom, comprising an alkyl, aryl, aralkyl heteroalkyl, and/or heteroaralkyl moiety, said residue having from 1 to 60 preferably from 1 to 40, more preferably from 1 to 20, more preferably from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, and

- wherein D is a linkage, preferably a covalent linkage which was formed by a suitable
25 functional group F^2 linked to L_1 and a suitable functional group F_3 linked to L_2 .

The present invention also relates to conjugate as described above, wherein L_1 is $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$ with $n = 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10$, preferably 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, more preferably 2, 3, 4, and especially preferably 4.

The present invention also relates to conjugate as described above, wherein L_2 comprises an optionally suitably substituted aryl moiety, preferably an aryl moiety containing 6 carbon atoms, L_2 being especially preferably C_6H_4 .

5

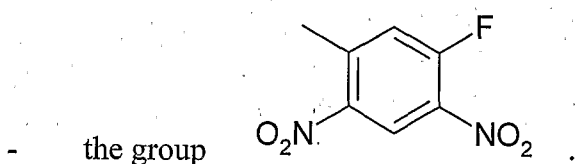
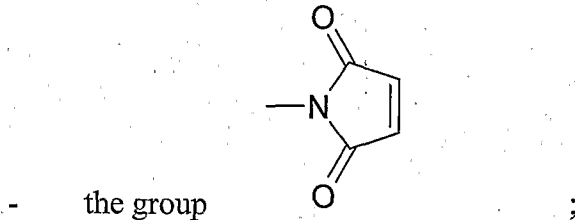
The present invention also relates to conjugate as described above, wherein is selected from the group consisting of

- C-C-double bonds or C-C-triple bonds or aromatic C-C-bonds;
- the thio group or the hydroxy groups;
- 10 - alkyl sulfonic acid hydrazide, aryl sulfonic acid hydrazide;
- 1,2-dioles;
- 1,2 amino-thioalcohols;
- azides;
- 1,2-aminoalcohols;
- 15 - the amino group $-NH_2$ or derivatives of the amino groups comprising the structure unit $-NH-$ such as aminoalkyl groups, aminoaryl group, aminoaralkyl groups, or alkarlyaminogroups;
- the hydroxylamino group $-O-NH_2$, or derivatives of the hydroxylamino group comprising the structure unit $-O-NH-$, such as hydroxylalkylamino groups,
- 20 hydroxylarylamino groups, hydroxylaralkylamino groups, or hydroxalalkarylamino groups;
- alkoxyamino groups, aryloxyamino groups, aralkyloxyamino groups, or alkaryloxyamino groups, each comprising the structure unit $-NH-O-$;
- residues having a carbonyl group, $-Q-C(=G)-M$, wherein G is O or S, and M is,
- 25 for example,
 - $-OH$ or $-SH$;
 - an alkoxy group, an aryloxy group, an aralkyloxy group, or an alkaryloxy group;
 - an alkylthio group, an arylthio group, an aralkylthio group, or an
 - 30 alkarylthio group;
 - an alkylcarbonyloxy group, an arylcarbonyloxy group, an aralkylcarbonyloxy group, an alkarylcarbonyloxy group;
 - activated esters such as esters of hydroxylamines having imid structure such as N-hydroxysuccinimide or having a structure unit $O-N$ where N is

part of a heteroaryl compound or, with $G = O$ and Q absent, such as aryloxy compounds with a substituted aryl residue such as pentafluorophenyl, paranitrophenyl or trichlorophenyl;

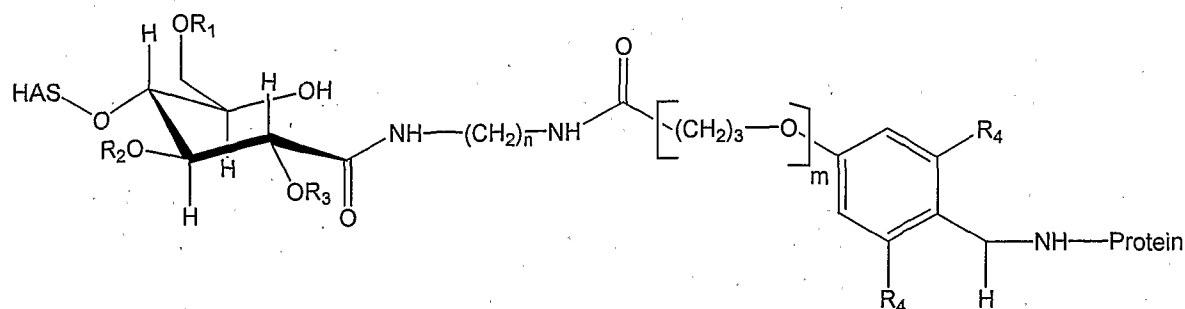
wherein Q is absent or NH or a heteroatom such as S or O ;

- 5 - $-NH-NH_2$, or $-NH-NH-$;
- $-NO_2$;
- the nitril group;
- carbonyl groups such as the aldehyde group or the keto group;
- the carboxy group;
- 10 - the $-N=C=O$ group or the $-N=C=S$ group;
- vinyl halide groups such as the vinyl iodide or the vinyl bromide group or triflate;
- $-C\equiv C-H$;
- $-(C=NH_2Cl)-OAlkyl$.
- 15 - groups $-(C=O)-CH_2-Hal$ wherein Hal is Cl , Br , or I ;
- $-CH=CH-SO_2-$;
- a disulfide group comprising the structure $-S-S-$;



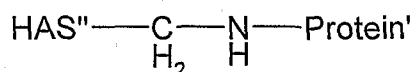
and wherein F_3 is a functional group capable of forming a chemical linkage with F_2 and is preferably selected from the above-mentioned group, F_2 preferably comprising the moiety $-NH-$, more preferably comprising an amino group, F_3 preferably comprising the moiety $-(C=G)-$, more preferably $-(C=O)-$, more preferably the moiety $-(C=G)-G-$, still more preferably $-(C=O)-G-$, and especially preferably $-(C=O)-O$, D being particularly preferably an amide linkage.

- 25 The present invention also relates to conjugate as described above, having a structure according to the formula



$n = 2, 3, \text{ or } 4$, R_4 being independently hydrogen or a methoxy group, and $m = 0$ in case R_4 is hydrogen and $m = 1$ in case R_4 is methoxy.

- 5 The present invention also relates to conjugate, comprising a protein and a polymer or a derivative thereof, wherein the polymer is a hydroxyalkyl starch (HAS) and the protein is a granulocyte colony stimulating factor (G-CSF), having a structure according to the formula



- 10 wherein the carbon atom of the moiety $-\text{CH}_2\text{-N}_2-$ is derived from an aldehyde group which was introduced in the polymer by a ring-opening oxidation reaction, and wherein the nitrogen atom is derived from an amino group of the protein.

The present invention also relates to conjugate as described above, wherein the hydroxyalkyl starch is hydroxyethyl starch.

15

The present invention also relates to any of the conjugates as described wherein the hydroxyethyl starch has a molecular weight of from 2 to 200 kD, preferably of from 4 to 130 kD, more preferably of from 4 to 70 kD.

- 20 The present invention also relates to conjugate as described above, wherein the protein is selected from the group consisting of EPO, G-CSF, IFN alpha, IFN beta, AT III, IL-2, IL-3, myoglobin, SOD, and BSA, preferably from the group consisting of rhEPO, rhG-CSF, rhIFN alpha, rhIFN beta, rhAT III, rhIL-2, rhIL-3, myoglobin, SOD, and BSA, and/or from the group consisting of A1AT, factor VII, factor VIII, factor IX, tPA, and APC.

25

In the methods for preparing a conjugate of the invention the conversion rate in the above described methods may be at least 50%, more preferred at least 70%, even more preferred at least 80% and in particular 95% or even more, such as at least 98% or 99%.

The conjugates according to the invention may be at least 50% pure, even more preferred at least 70% pure, even more preferred at least 90%, in particular at least 95% or at least 99% pure. In a most preferred embodiment, the conjugates may be 100% pure, i.e. there are no other by-products present.

Therefore, according to another aspect, the present invention also relates to a composition which may comprise the conjugate(s) of the invention, wherein the amount of the conjugate(s) may be at least 50 wt.-%, even more preferred at least 70 wt.-%, even more preferred at least 90 wt.-%, in particular at least 95 wt.-% or at least 99 wt.-%. In a most preferred embodiment, the composition may consist of the conjugate(s), i.e. the amount of the conjugate(s) is 100 wt.-%.

According to another aspect, the present invention also relates to a conjugate as described above or a conjugate, obtainable by a method as described, for use in a method for the treatment of the human or animal body.

Accordingly, the present invention relates to a pharmaceutical composition comprising in a therapeutically effective amount a conjugate as described above or a conjugate, obtainable by a method as described above.

The term "therapeutically effective amount" as used in the context of the present invention relates to that amount which provides therapeutic effect for a given condition and administration regimen.

Thus, in a preferred embodiment, the pharmaceutical composition further comprises at least one pharmaceutically acceptable diluent, adjuvant and/or carrier. Preferably, this pharmaceutically acceptable diluent, adjuvant and/or carrier is especially useful in IFN alpha, IFN beta, EPO, AT III, G-CSF, APC, A1AT, tPA, Factor VII, Factor VIII or Factor IX therapy.

All protein-HAS conjugates of the present invention are preferably administered by i.v., s.c. or i.m. routes. The specific route chosen will depend upon the condition being treated. Preferably, the conjugates are administered together with a suitable carrier, such as known in the art (e.g. as used in the first generation/unmodified biopharmaceutical, albumin-free

or with albumin as an excipient), a suitable diluent, such as sterile solutions for i.v., i.m., or s.c. application. The required dosage will depend on the severity of the condition being treated, the patients individual response, the method of administration used, and the like. The skilled person is able to establish a correct dosage based on his general knowledge.

5

According to another aspect, the present invention also relates to the use a HAS-, preferably a HES-protein conjugate as described above or a HAS-, preferably a HES-protein conjugate, obtainable by a method as described above, wherein the protein is EPO, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of anemic disorders or hematopoietic dysfunction disorders or diseases related thereto.

10

The administration of erythropoietin isoforms is preferably by parenteral routes. The specific route chosen will depend upon the condition being treated. The administration of erythropoietin isoforms is preferably done as part of a formulation containing a suitable carrier, such as human serum albumin, a suitable diluent, such as a buffered saline solution, and/or a suitable adjuvant. The required dosage will be in amounts sufficient to raise the hematocrit of patients and will vary depending upon the severity of the condition being treated, the method of administration used and the like. The object of the treatment with the pharmaceutical composition of the invention is preferably an increase of the hemoglobin value of more than 6.8 mmol/l in the blood. For this, the pharmaceutical composition may be administered in a way that the hemoglobin value increases between 0.6 mmol/l and 1.6 mmol/l per week. If the hemoglobin value exceeds 8.7 mmol/l, the therapy should be preferably interrupted until the hemoglobin value is below 8.1 mmol/l. The composition of the invention is preferably used in a formulation suitable for subcutaneous or intravenous or parenteral injection. For this, suitable excipients and carriers are e.g. sodium dihydrogen phosphate, disodium hydrogen phosphate, sodium chlorate, polysorbate 80, HSA and water for injection. The composition may be administered three times a week, preferably two times a week, more preferably once a week, and most preferably every two weeks. Preferably, the pharmaceutical composition is administered in an amount of 0.01-10 µg/kg body weight of the patient, more preferably 0,1 to 5 µg/kg, 0,1 to 1 µg/kg, or 0.2-0.9 µg/kg, most preferably 0.3-0.7 µg/kg, and most preferred 0.4-0.6 µg/kg body weight. In general, preferably between 10 µg and 200 µg, preferably between 15 µg and 100 µg are administered per dosis.

15

20

25

30

According to another aspect, the present invention also relates to the use a HAS-, preferably a HES-protein conjugate as described above or a HAS-, preferably a HES-protein conjugate, obtainable by a method as described above, wherein the protein is G-CSF, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of a disorder characterized by a
5 reduced hematopoietic or immune function, said disorder preferably being a result of chemotherapy, radiation therapy, infectious disease, severe chronic neutropenia, or leukemia.

According to another aspect, the present invention also relates to the use a HAS-,
10 preferably a HES-protein conjugate as described above or a HAS-, preferably a HES-protein conjugate, obtainable by a method as described above, wherein the protein is Factor VIII, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of haemophilia A.

According to another aspect, the present invention also relates to the use of a HAS-AT III
15 conjugate as described above or a HAS-protein conjugate, obtainable by a method as described, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of AT III hereditary deficiency, veno-Occlusive disease, burns and heparin resistance in coronary arterial bypass Graft (CABG) surgery, bowel perforation resulting from trauma or gastrointestinal surgery; disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) and/or sepsis as well as for the
20 prevention of micro-clot formation associated with ventilation therapy. The pharmaceutical composition comprising the HAS-AT III conjugate of the invention may therefore be used for these purposes.

According to another aspect, the present invention also relates to the use a HAS-,
25 preferably a HES-protein conjugate as described above or a HAS-, preferably a HES-protein conjugate, obtainable by a method as described above, wherein the protein is A1AT, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of emphysema, cystic fibrosis, atopic dermatitis, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), and/or bronchitis. The pharmaceutical composition of the invention comprising the HAS-A1AT-
30 conjugate of the invention may also be used for these purposes.

According to another aspect, the present invention also relates to the use a HAS-, preferably a HES-protein conjugate as described above or a HAS-, preferably a HES-protein conjugate, obtainable by a method as described above, wherein the protein is tPA,

for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of myocardial infarcts (heart attacks), thrombosis, thromboembolism or occlusive diseases, especially occlusive arterial diseases.

5 According to another aspect, the present invention also relates to the use a HAS-, preferably a HES-protein conjugate as described above or a HAS-, preferably a HES-protein conjugate, obtainable by a method as described above, wherein the protein is APC, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of severe sepsis, thrombosis, thromboembolism or occlusive diseases, especially occlusive arterial diseases.

10 According to another aspect, the present invention also relates to the use a HAS-, preferably a HES-protein conjugate as described above or a HAS-, preferably a HES-protein conjugate, obtainable by a method as described above, wherein the protein is IFN alpha, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of leukaemia e.g. hairy cell leukaemia, chronic myelogeneous leukaemia, multiple myeloma, follicular lymphoma,
15 cancer, e.g. carcinoid tumour, malignant melanoma and hepatitis, eg. chronic hepatitis B and chronic hepatitis C.

According to another aspect, the present invention also relates to the use a HAS-, preferably a HES-protein conjugate as described above or a HAS-, preferably a HES-
20 protein conjugate, obtainable by a method as described above, wherein the protein is IFN beta, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of multiple sclerosis, preferably relapsing forms of multiple sclerosis.

The present invention also relates to the use of a HAS-Factor VII conjugate for the
25 preparation of a medicament for the treatment of episodes in hemophilia A or B patients with inhibitors to Factor VIII or Factor IX.

The present invention also relates to the use of a HAS-Factor IX conjugate for the preparation of a medicament for the control and prevention of hemorrhagic episodes in
30 patients with hemophilia B (e.g. congenital factor IX deficiency or Christmas disease), including control and prevention of bleeding in surgical settings.

The invention is further illustrated by the following figures, table and examples, which are in no way intended to restrict the scope of the present invention.

Short description of the Figures

Figure 1a

5

Figure 1a shows an SDS page analysis of the HES—G-CSF conjugate, produced according to Example 2.1(a), Neupogen®. For gel electrophoresis, a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12% Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction.

- 15
- Lane A: Protein marker SeeBlue®Plus2 (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 188 kD, 98 kD, 62 kD, 49 kD, 38 kD, 28 kD, 17 kD, 14 kD, 6 kD, 3 kD.
- Lane B: Crude product after conjugation of G-CSF (Neupogen®) with HES as described in Example 2.1(a).
- Lane C: G-CSF starting material.

20

Figure 1b

Figure 1b shows an SDS page analysis of the HES—G-CSF conjugate, produced according to Example 2.1(a), Granocyte®. For gel electrophoresis, a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12% Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction.

- 25
- 30
- Lane A: Protein marker SeeBlue®Plus2 (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D). Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 188 kD, 98 kD, 62 kD, 49 kD, 38 kD, 28 kD, 17 kD, 14 kD, 6 kD, 3 kD.
- Lane B: Crude product after conjugation of G-CSF (Granocyte®) with HES as described in Example 2.1(a).

Lane C: G-CSF starting material.

Figure 2

5

Figure 2 shows an SDS page analysis of the HES—G-CSF conjugate, produced according to Example 2.1(b), G-CSF being purified hG-CSF having essentially the same characteristics as the commercial product Neupogen®. For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12% Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction.

10

15

Lane A: Protein marker SeeBlue®Plus2 (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D). Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 188 kD, 98 kD, 62 kD, 49 kD, 38 kD, 28 kD, 17 kD, 14 kD, 6 kD, 3 kD

Lane B: Crude product after conjugation of G-CSF with HES10/0.4 in 0.1M NaOAc buffer pH 5.0.

20

Lane C: Crude product after conjugation of G-CSF with HES10/0.7 in 0.1M NaOAc buffer pH 5.0.

Lane D: Crude product after conjugation of G-CSF with HES50/0.4 in 0.1M NaOAc buffer pH 5.0.

Lane E: Crude product after conjugation of G-CSF with HES50/0.7 in 0.1M NaOAc buffer pH 5.0.

25

Lane F: G-CSF starting material.

Figure 3

30

Figure 3 shows an SDS page analysis of the HES—G-CSF conjugates, produced according to Example 2.2, G-CSF being purified hG-CSF having essentially the same characteristics as the commercial product Neupogen®. For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12% Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running

buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction.

- 5 Lane A: Protein marker SeeBlue®Plus2 (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D). Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 188 kD, 98 kD, 62 kD, 49 kD, 38 kD, 28 kD, 17 kD, 14 kD, 6 kD, 3 kD.
- Lane B: Crude product after conjugation of G-CSF with oxidized HES10/0.7 in 0.1M NaOAc buffer pH 5.0.
- 10 Lane C: Crude product after conjugation of G-CSF with oxidized HES50/0.4 in 0.1M NaOAc buffer pH 5.0.
- Lane D: Crude product after conjugation of G-CSF with oxidized HES50/0.7 in 0.1M NaOAc buffer pH 5.0.
- Lane E: G-CSF starting material.

15

Figure 4

Figure 4 shows an SDS page analysis of the HES—G-CSF conjugates, produced according to Example 2.3, G-CSF is Neupogen® or Granocyte®. For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12% Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction.

- 25 Lane A: Protein marker SeeBlue®Plus2 (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D). Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 188 kD, 98 kD, 62 kD, 49 kD, 38 kD, 28 kD, 17 kD, 14 kD, 6 kD, 3 kD.
- Lane B: Crude product (i-N) according to Example 2.3.
- Lane C: Crude product (ii-N) according to Example 2.3.
- 30 Lane D: Crude product (iii-N) according to Example 2.3.
- Lane E: Crude product (iv-N) according to Example 2.3.
- Lane F: Crude product (i-G) according to Example 2.3.
- Lane G: Crude product (ii-G) according to Example 2.3.
- Lane H: Crude product (iii-G) according to Example 2.3.

Lane I: Crude product (iv-G) according to Example 2.3.

Lane J: Neupogen®.

5 Figure 5

Figure 5 shows an SDS page analysis of the HES—G-CSF conjugates, produced according to Example 2.4, G-CSF being purified hG-CSF having essentially the same characteristics as the commercial product Neupogen®. For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini
10 Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12% Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction.

15 Lane A: Protein marker SeeBlue®Plus2 (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D). Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 188 kD, 98 kD, 62 kD, 49 kD, 38 kD, 28 kD, 17 kD, 14 kD, 6 kD, 3 kD.

Lane B: Crude product (vi) according to Example 2.4.

Lane C: Crude product (v) according to Example 2.4.

20 Lane D: G-CSF starting material.

Lane E: Protein marker SeeBlue®Plus2 (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D). Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 188 kD, 98 kD, 62 kD, 49 kD, 38 kD, 28 kD, 17 kD, 14 kD, 6 kD, 3 kD.

Lane F: Crude product (ix) according to Example 2.4.

25 Lane G: Crude product (viii) according to Example 2.4.

Lane H: Crude product (vii) according to Example 2.4.

Lane I: G-CSF starting material.

30 Figure 6

Figure 6 shows an SDS page analysis of the HES—G-CSF conjugate, produced according to Example 2.5, G-CSF being purified hG-CSF having essentially the same characteristics as the commercial product Neupogen®. For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini

Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 10% Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction.

5

Lane A: Protein marker SeeBlue®Plus2 (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D). Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 188 kD, 98 kD, 62 kD, 49 kD, 38 kD, 28 kD, 17 kD, 14 kD, 6 kD, 3 kD.

Lane B: Crude product according to Example 2.5.

10 Lane C: G-CSF starting material.

Figure 7

15 Figure 7 shows an SDS page analysis of the HES-Protein conjugates, produced according to Example 2.6. For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12% Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction. Samples with a volume grater then 15 µl were concentrated in vacuo to this volume.

20

Lane A: Protein marker SeeBlue®Plus2 (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D). Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 188 kD, 98 kD, 62 kD, 49 kD, 38 kD, 28 kD, 17 kD, 14 kD, 6 kD, 3 kD.

25

Lane B: Conjugation of IL-2 with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.9.

Lane C: Conjugation of IL-2 with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.10.

30

Lane D: Control: IL-2, treated with sodium borohydride without aldehydo-HES.

Lane E: Conjugation of IFN-alpha with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.9.

Lane F: Conjugation of IFN-alpha with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.10.

Lane G: Control: IFN-alpha, treated with sodium borohydride without aldehydo-HES.

Figure 8

5

Figure 8 shows an SDS page analysis of the HES—Protein conjugates, produced according to Example 2.6. For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12% Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction. Samples with a volume grater then 15 µL were concentrated in vacuo to this volume.

10

Lane A: Protein marker SeeBlue®Plus2 (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D). Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 188 kD, 98 kD, 62 kD, 49 kD, 38 kD, 28 kD, 17 kD, 14 kD, 6 kD, 3 kD.

15

Lane B: Conjugation of IL-3 with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.9.

Lane C: Conjugation of IL-3 with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.10.

20

Lane D: Control: IL-3, treated with sodium borohydride without aldehydo-HES.

Lane E: Conjugation of Myoglobin with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.9.

Lane F: Conjugation of Myoglobin with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.10.

25

Lane G: Control: Myoglobin, treated with sodium borohydride without aldehydo-HES.

Figure 9

30

Figure 9 shows an SDS page analysis of the HES—Protein conjugates, produced according to Example 2.6. For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 3-8% Tris-Acetate gel together with a Tris-Acetate SDS running buffer at

reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction.

Lane A: Protein marker SeeBlue®Plus2 (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D). Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 188 kD, 98 kD, 62 kD, 49 kD, 38 kD, 28 kD, 17 kD, 14 kD, 6 kD, 3 kD.

Lane B: Conjugation of BSA with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.9.

Lane C: Conjugation of BSA with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.10.

Lane D: Control: BSA, treated with sodium borohydride without aldehydo-HES.

Figure 10

Figure 10 shows an SDS page analysis of the HES-Protein conjugates, produced according to Example 2.6. For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12% Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction. Samples with a volume grater then 15 µL were concentrated in vacuo to this volume.

Lane A: Protein marker SeeBlue®Plus2 (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 188 kD, 98 kD, 62 kD, 49 kD, 38 kD, 28 kD, 17 kD, 14 kD, 6 kD, 3 kD.

Lane B: Conjugation of SOD with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.9.

Lane C: Conjugation of SOD with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.10.

Lane D: Control: SOD, treated with sodium borohydride without aldehydo-HES.

Lane E: Control: EPO, treated with sodium borohydride without aldehydo-HES.

Lane F: Conjugation of EPO with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.9.

- Lane G: Conjugation of EPO with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.10.
- Lane H: Conjugation of IFN-beta with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.9.
- 5 Lane I: Conjugation of IFN-beta with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.10.
- Lane J: Control: IFN-beta, treated with sodium borohydride without aldehydo-HES.

10 Figure 11

Figure 11 shows an SDS page analysis of the HES-Protein conjugates, produced according to Example 2.6. For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 3-8% Tris-Acetate gel together with a Tris-Acetate SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction.

15

- Lane A: Protein marker SeeBlue®Plus2 (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 188 kD, 98 kD, 62 kD, 49 kD, 38 kD, 28 kD, 17 kD, 14 kD, 6 kD, 3 kD.
- 20
- Lane B: Conjugation of AT III with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.9.
- Lane C: Conjugation of AT III with aldehydo-HES synthesized as described in Example 1.10.
- 25
- Lane D: Control: AT III, treated with sodium borohydride without aldehydo-HES.

Figure 12

30

Figure 12 shows the in vitro results of Example 4.

In the diagram, the x axis shows the concentration in pg/ml, the y axis refers to the number of cells / 100,000.

In the diagram, the following abbreviations refer to

G-CSF/A32	G-CSF conjugate as prepared according to Example 2.5
G-CSF/A33	G-CSF starting material, used for the conjugate of Example 2.5
5 G-CSF/A57	non-modified Neulasta®
G-CSF/A58	non-modified Neupogen®

Figure 13

10 **SDS-PAGE :** Flow-through and eluate of HES-modified G-CSF according to Example 2.5 after chromatography (see Example 3) on DEAE-Sepharose CL-6B ; 1.5% of the indicated fractions were desalted by ultrafiltration, dried in a SpeedVac and were applied onto a 12.5% polyacrylamide gel.

15 **Figure 14:** MALDI/TOF spectrum of G-CSF (see Example 3)

Figure 15: MALDI/TOF spectrum of HES-modified G-CSF (see Example 3)

Figure 16:

Figure 16 shows results of example 5 (analysis of the crude α 1AT-HES conjugates prepared as described in example 5.5 by gel electrophoresis).

25 For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Power Pac 200 power supply (Bio-Rad, München, D) were employed. A 3-8 % Tris-Acetate gel together with a Tris-Acetate SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction.

30 Lane A: Unstained SDS Page Protein Marker 6.5-200KDa (SERVA Elektrophoresis GmbH, Heidelberg, D) Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 200 KD, 116 KD, 67 KD, 45 KD, 29 KD, 21 KD, 14.3 KD, 6.5 KD;

Lane B: Conjugation to aldehydo-HES as described in example 5.5;

35 Lane C: Conjugation to HES as described in example 5.6.

Figure 17:

Figure 17 shows results of example 5 (analysis of the fractions B1-C6 collected after Ion Exchange Chromatography (see example 5.7))

5

Conditions for gel electrophoresis see figure 16.

Lane A: Unstained SDS Page Protein Marker 6.5-200KDa (SERVA Elektrophoresis GmbH, Heidelberg, D) Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 200 KD, 116 KD, 67 KD, 45 KD, 29 KD, 21 KD, 14.3 KD, 6.5 KD;

10

Lane B: Fraction B1

Lane C: Fraction C1

Lane D: Fraction C2

Lane E: Fraction C3

15

Lane F: Fraction C4

Lane G: Fraction C5

Lane H: Fraction C6

Lane I: A1AT (GTC Biotherapeutics Inc., Framingham, MA, lot No. 080604A)

20

Figure 18:

Figure 18 shows the residual enzyme activity vs. concentration plot of Prolastin® HS (Bayer Vital GmbH, Leverkusen, Germany, Lot No. PR4HA43), A1AT (GTC Biotherapeutics Inc., Framingham, MA, lot No. 080604A) and a HES-A1AT-conjugate synthesized as described in example 5.5

25

Figure 19

Figure 19 shows the gel electrophoresis of the reaction mixtures of example 6.2(b).

30

For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12% Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction. The gel was stained with Roti-Blue (Carl Roth GmbH + Co.KG, Karlsruhe, D) according to the manufacturer's instruction.

35

- Lane A: Protein marker Roti-Mark STANDARD (Carl Roth GmbH + Co.KG, Karlsruhe, D) Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 200 KD, 119 KD, 66 KD, 43 KD, 29 KD, 20 KD, 14.3 KD
- 5 Lane B: Crude product after conjugation of hG-CSF with the HES derivative prepared in example 6.1(d)
- Lane C: Crude product after conjugation of hG-CSF with the HES derivative prepared in example 6.1(b)
- Lane D: Crude product after conjugation of hG-CSF with the HES derivative prepared in example 6.1(j)
- 10 Lane E: Reaction control: HES 50/0.7 (Mw 47,000, DS = 0.76)

Figure 20

Figure 20 shows the gel electrophoresis of the reaction mixtures of example 6.2(d).

- 15 For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12% Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction. The gel was stained with Roti-Blue (Carl Roth GmbH + Co.KG, Karlsruhe, D) according to the
- 20 manufacturer's instruction.

Lane A: Protein marker Roti-Mark STANDARD (Carl Roth GmbH + Co.KG, Karlsruhe, D) Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 200 KD, 119 KD, 66 KD, 43 KD, 29 KD, 20 KD, 14.3 KD.

Lane B: hG-CSF after buffer exchange as described in Example 6.2(c).

- 25 Lane C: Crude product after conjugation of hG-CSF with the HES derivative prepared as described in Example 6.1(f).
- Lane D: Crude product after conjugation of hG-CSF with the HES derivative prepared as described in Example 6.1(h).

30 Figure 21

Figure 21 shows the results of the mitogenicity assay of example 6.3. The Y axis indicates number of NFS-60-Cells/ml and the X-axis the concentration in pg/ml.

Figure 22

Figure 22 shows the results of the in vivo assay of example 6.4.

5 Figure 23

Figure 23 shows the analysis of the crude EPO-HES conjugates of example 7 by gel electrophoresis.

10 For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 10 % Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufacturer's instruction.

15 Lane A: Roti®-Mark STANDARD (Carl Roth GmbH + Co. KG, Karlsruhe, D) Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 200 KD, 119 KD, 66 KD, 43 KD, 29 KD, 20 KD, 14.3 KD;

Lane B: Conjugation of EPO to aldehydo-HES as described in example 7.3;

20 Lane C: Reaction of EPO and aldehydo-HES without sodium cyanoborohydride (Reaction Control A) as described in example 7.4;

Lane D: Reaction of EPO and sodium cyanoborohydride without aldehydo-HES (Reaction Control B) as described in example 7.5.

25 As it becomes evident from Fig. 23, no reaction was observed for the reaction controls A and B either without aldehydo-HES or without sodium cyanoborohydride.

Figure 24

30 Figure 24 shows the analysis of IFN-alpha-HES conjugates of example 8.3.1 by gel electrophoresis.

For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 10 % Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufacturer's instruction.

35

- Lane X: Roti®-Mark STANDARD (Carl Roth GmbH + Co. KG, Karlsruhe, D)
Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 200 KD, 119 KD, 88 KD, 43
KD, 29 KD, 20 KD, 14.3 KD;
- Lane A: Conjugation to aldehydoHES10/0.4 as described in ex. 8.3.1, entry A;
- 5 Lane B: Conjugation to aldehydoHES10/0.7 as described in ex. 8.3.1, entry B;
- Lane C: Conjugation to aldehydoHES30/0.4 as described in ex. 8.3.1, entry C;
- Lane D: Conjugation to aldehydoHES30/0.7 as described in ex. 8.3.1, entry D;
- Lane E: Conjugation to aldehydoHES50/0.4 as described in ex. 8.3.1, entry E;
- Lane F: Conjugation to aldehydoHES50/0.7 as described in ex. 8.3.1, entry F;
- 10 Lane G: Reaction control, without aldehydoHES as described in ex. 8.3.1, entry G;
- Lane I: Reaction control, without aldehydoHES and without NaCNBH₃ as described in
ex. 8.3.1, entry I;
- Lane J: Reaction control, with HES10/0.4 as described in ex. 8.3.1, entry J;
- Lane K: Reaction control, with HES10/0.4 but without NaCNBH₃ as described in ex.
15 8.3.1, entry K.

Figure 25

Figure 25 shows the analysis of IFN-alpha-HES conjugates of example 8.3.2 by gel
20 electrophoresis.

For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and
a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 10 % Bis-
Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen
25 GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufacturer's instructions.

- Lane X: Roti®-Mark STANDARD (Carl Roth GmbH + Co. KG, Karlsruhe, D)
Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 200 KD, 119 KD, 88 KD, 43
KD, 29 KD, 20 KD, 14.3 KD;
- 30 Lane A: Conjugation to aldehydo-HES as described in example 8.3.2 entry A;
- Lane B: Conjugation to aldehydo-HES as described in example 8.3.2 entry B;
- Lane C: Conjugation to aldehydo-HES as described in example 8.3.2 entry C;
- Lane D: Conjugation to aldehydo-HES as described in example 8.3.2 entry D;
- Lane E: Conjugation to aldehydo-HES as described in example 8.3.2 entry E;
- 35 Lane F: Conjugation to aldehydo-HES as described in example 8.3.2 entry F;

Lane G: Reaction control, with HES as described in example 8.3.2 entry G

As it becomes evident from Fig. 25, no reaction was observed for the reaction control G.

5 Figure 26

Figure 26 shows the analysis of IFN-alpha-HES conjugates of example 8.3.3 by gel electrophoresis.

- 10 For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 10 % Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufacturer's instruction.

Analysis of the crude IFN α -HES conjugates by gel electrophoresis.

- 15 Lane A: Roti®-Mark STANDARD (Carl Roth GmbH + Co. KG, Karlsruhe, D)
Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 200 KD, 119 KD, 66 KD, 43 KD, 29 KD, 20 KD, 14.3 KD;

Lane B: Conjugation of IFN α to AldehydoHES as described in 8.3.3.1;

Lane C: Conjugation of IFN α to AldehydoHES as described in 8.3.3.2;

- 20 Lane D: Conjugation of IFN α to HES10/0.4 sodium (Reaction Control) as described in 8.3.3.3

Figure 27

- 25 Figure 27 shows the analysis of IFN-alpha-HES conjugates of example 8.3.4 by gel electrophoresis.

- For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 10 % Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- 30

Lane X: Roti®-Mark STANDARD (Carl Roth GmbH + Co. KG, Karlsruhe, D)
Molecular weight marker from top to bottom: 200 KD, 119 KD, 88 KD, 43 KD, 29 KD, 20 KD, 14.3 KD

- 35 Lane A: Conjugation to aldehydo-HES as described in example 8.3.4;

Lane B: Reaction control; conjugation to HES (MW = 7.6 kD, DS = 0.41) as described in example 8.3.4.

As it becomes evident from Fig. 27, no reaction was observed for the reaction control B.

Figure 28

Figure 28 shows the proliferative activity of Intron A compared to NIH standard rhIFN-alpha 2a according to example 9.1.

Figure 29

Figure 29 shows the relative *in vitro* activity of mock incubated IFN-alpha-HES compared to unmodified IFN-alpha starting material according to example 9.2.

Figure 30

Figure 30 shows relative *in vitro* activity of IFN-alpha-HES conjugates compared to unmodified IFN-alpha starting material, Intron A and Pegasys, respectively, according to example 9.3.

Figure 31

Figure 31 shows the relative *in vitro* activity of IFN-alpha-HES conjugate compared to Intron A according to example 9.4.

Figure 32

Figure 32 shows the dilution of serum samples required to achieve a 50% protection of MDBK cells against viral infection vs. time post i.v. injection of 30 µg/kg in mice. Serum from mice treated with unmodified starting material has a very low antiviral effect. Modification of IFN-alpha with HES prolongs the antiviral effect of serum substantially. The half life increases with molecular weight of HES used for modification of IFN-alpha (see example 10).

Figure 33

Figure 33 shows data from the PK-Study in rabbits according to example 11. IFN-alpha-HES shows a distinct prolongation of half-life compared to the IFN-alpha starting material. For > 24 h (approx. < 1000 pCi/ml) the curve of the unmodified material levels off and almost no further decrease of activity can be observed

Figure 34

Figure 34 shows PK-Study in rabbits according to example 11. Data were evaluated in the period between 4 and 24 h. IFN-alpha-HES shows a distinct prolongation of half-life compared to the unmodified IFN-alpha starting material.

Figure 35

Figure 35 shows the statistical evaluation of the PK-Study (shown: period up to 12 h) according to example 11. In the case of the unmodified starting material (see Figure 35 (a)), the concentration dropped to almost zero during the first two hours, whereas IFN-alpha-HES shows a distinctly prolonged half-life (Figure 35 (b)).

Figure 36

Figure 36 shows the results of example 6.5 (comparison of half-life determination of a HES-G-CSF conjugate according to the invention, Neulasta® and Neupogen®).

Figure 37

Figure 37 shows the results of example 10.3 in a graph (antiviral activity of IFN-alpha-HES conjugates)

Figure 38

Figure 38 shows the results of example 9.5 in a graph (antiviral activity of IFN- α -HES conjugates)

Examples

5

Example 1: Synthesis of aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch

Example 1.1(a): Synthesis by periodate oxidation of hydroxyethyl starch selectively oxidized at its reducing end and incubation at 0 °C

10

100 mg of Oxo-HES10/0.4 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.4, prepared by Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D; according to DE 196 28 705 A1) were dissolved in 5 ml 20 mM sodium phosphate buffer, pH 7.2 and cooled to 0 °C. 21.4 mg sodium periodate (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 5 ml of the same buffer and cooled to 0°C. Both solutions were mixed and after incubation for 10 min at 0°C, 0.73 ml glycerol were added and the reaction mixture was incubated at 21°C for 10 min. The reaction mixture was dialysed for 24 h against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized.

20 The molecular weight of the HES10/0.4 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 10.5 kD and the DS was 0.41.

Example 1.1(b) Synthesis by periodate oxidation of hydroxyethyl starch selectively oxidized at its reducing end and incubation at 21 °C

25

100 mg of Oxo-HES10/0.4 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.4, prepared by Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D; according to DE 196 28 705 A1) were dissolved in 5 ml 20 mM sodium phosphate buffer, pH 7.2. 21.4 mg sodium periodate (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 5 ml of the same buffer. Both solutions were mixed and after incubation for 10 min at 21 °C 0.73 ml glycerol were added and the reaction mixture was incubated at 21°C for 10 min. The reaction mixture was dialysed for 24 h against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized.

30

The molecular weight of the HES10/0.4 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 10.5 kD and the DS was 0.41.

**Example 1.2(a): Synthesis of aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch by
periodate oxidation of hydroxyethyl starch with non-oxidized
reducing end and incubation at 0 °C**

100 mg of HES10/0.4 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.4, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D) were dissolved in 5 ml 20 mM sodium phosphate buffer, pH 7.2 and cooled to 0 °C. 21.4 mg sodium periodate (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 5 ml of the same buffer and cooled to 0°C. Both solutions were mixed and after incubation for 10 min at 0°C 0.73 ml glycerol were added and the reaction mixture was incubated at 21°C for 10 min. The reaction mixture was dialysed for 24 h against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized.

The molecular weight of the HES10/0.4 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 8.5 kD and the DS was 0.41.

**Example 1.2(b): Synthesis of aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch by
periodate oxidation of hydroxyethyl starch with non-oxidized
reducing end and incubation at 21 °C**

100 mg of HES10/0.4 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.4, prepared by Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D) were dissolved in 5 ml 20 mM sodium phosphate buffer, pH 7.2. 21.4 mg sodium periodate (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 5 ml of the same buffer. Both solutions were mixed and after incubation for 10 min at 21 °C 0.73 ml glycerol were added and the reaction mixture was incubated at 21 °C for 10 min. The reaction mixture was dialysed for 24 h against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized.

The molecular weight of the HES10/0.4 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 8.5 kD and the DS was 0.41.

Example 1.3: Synthesis of aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch from amino functionalized hydroxyethyl starch and formylbenzoic acid

Oxo-HES10/0.4 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.4) was prepared by Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D; according to DE 196 28 705 A1.

The molecular weight of the HES10/0.4 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 14.5 kD and the DS was 0.41.

5.1 g (0.51 mmol) of oxo-HES10/0.4 were dissolved in 15 ml anhydrous dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO, Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D)) and added dropwise under nitrogen to a solution of 5.1 ml (51 mmol) 1,4-diaminobutane in 10 ml anhydrous dimethyl sulfoxide and stirred at 40 °C for 19 h. The reaction mixture was added to a mixture of 80 ml ethanol and 80 ml acetone. The resulting precipitate was separated by centrifugation, washed with a mixture of 20 ml ethanol and 20 ml acetone and re-dissolved in 80 ml water. The solution was dialyzed for 4 days against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Science Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and subsequently lyophilized. The yield was 67 % (3.4 g) amino-HES10/0.4.

150 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 230 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 10 ml N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 204 µl N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide were added. After incubation at 21 °C for 30 min, 1 g of the amino-HES10/0.4 were added. After shaking for 19 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 84 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, re-dissolved in 50 ml water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized.

Example 1.4: Synthesis of aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch from hydroxyethyl starch and formylbenzoic acid

Oxo-HES10/0.7 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.7) was prepared by Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D; according to DE 196 28 705 A1.

The molecular weight of the HES10/0.7 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 14.5 kD and the DS was 0.76.

83 mg of 4-formylbenzoic acid and 180 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 5 mL N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF, Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 78 µl N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide were added. After incubation at 21 °C for 30 min, 0.5 g of oxo-HES10/0.7 were added. After shaking for 19 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 37.5 ml of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, re-dissolved in a mixture of 2.5 ml water and 2.5 ml DMF and precipitated again as described above. The reaction product was collected by centrifugation as described, re-dissolved in 10 ml water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized.

Example 1.5: Synthesis of aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch from hydroxyethyl starch and formylbenzoic acid

HES10/0.7 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.7) was prepared by Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D.

The molecular weight of the HES10/0.7 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 10.5 kD and the DS was 0.76.

50 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 108 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 3 ml N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 47 µl N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide were added. After incubation at 21 °C for 30 min, 0.3 g of HES10/0.7 were added. After shaking for 19 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 23 ml of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, re-dissolved in a mixture of 1.5 ml water and 1.5 ml DMF and precipitated again as described above. The reaction product was collected by centrifugation as described, re-dissolved in 10 ml water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized.

Example 1.6: Synthesis of aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch from amino functionalized hydroxyethyl starch and formylbenzoic acid pentafluorophenyl ester

Oxo-HES10/0.7 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.7) was prepared by Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D; according to DE 196 28 705 A1.

The molecular weight of the HES10/0.7 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 14.5 kD and the DS was 0.76.

6.0 g (0.6 mmol) of oxo-HES10/0.7 were dissolved in 20 ml anhydrous dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO, Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D)) and added dropwise under nitrogen to a solution of 6 ml (60 mmol) 1,4-diaminobutane in 11 ml anhydrous dimethyl sulfoxide and stirred at 40 °C for 19 h. The reaction mixture was added to a mixture of 80 ml ethanol and 80 ml acetone. The resulting precipitate was separated by centrifugation, washed with a mixture of 20 ml ethanol and 20 ml acetone and re-dissolved in 80 ml water. The solution was dialyzed for 4 days against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Science Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and subsequently lyophilized. The yield was 52 % (3.15 g) amino-HES10/0.7.

4-formylbenzoic acid pentafluorophenyl ester was synthesized as described in J. S. Lindsey et al., Tetrahedron 50 (1994) pp. 8941-68, especially p. 8956. 50 mg of amino-HES10/0.7 were dissolved in 0.5 ml N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 15.3 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid pentafluorophenylester were added. After shaking for 22 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 3.5 ml of ice-cold 2-propanol. The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, washed with 4 ml ice-cold 2-propanol, re-dissolved in 50 ml water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized.

Example 1.7: Synthesis of aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch from hydroxyethyl starch and formylbenzoic acid pentafluorophenyl ester

Oxo-HES10/0.7 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.7) was prepared by Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D; according to DE 196 28 705 A1.

The molecular weight of the HES10/0.7 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 14.5 kD and the DS was 0.76.

4-formylbenzoic acid pentafluorophenyl ester was synthesized as described in J. S. Lindsey et al., Tetrahedron 50 (1994) pp. 8941-68, especially p. 8956. 200 mg oxo-HES10/0.7 were dissolved in 2 ml N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 61.2 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid pentafluorophenyl ester were added. After shaking for 22 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 15 mL of ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, re-dissolved in a mixture of 1.4 ml water and 0.7 ml DMF and precipitated again as described above. The reaction product was collected by centrifugation as described, re-dissolved in 10 ml water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized.

Example 1.8: Synthesis of aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch from amino functionalized hydroxyethyl starch and 4-(4-formyl-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)butyric acid

Oxo-HES10/0.4 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.4) was prepared by Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D; according to DE 196 28 705 A1.

The molecular weight of the HES10/0.4 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 14.5 kD and the DS was 0.41.

5.1 g (0.51 mmol) of oxo-HES10/0.4 were dissolved in 15 ml anhydrous dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO, Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D)) and added dropwise under nitrogen to a solution of 5.1 ml (51 mmol) 1,4-diaminobutane in 10 ml anhydrous dimethyl sulfoxide and stirred at 40 °C for 19 h. The reaction mixture was added to a mixture of 80 ml ethanol and 80 ml acetone. The resulting precipitate was separated by centrifugation, washed with a mixture of 20 ml ethanol and 20 ml acetone and re-dissolved in 80 ml water. The solution was dialyzed for 4 days against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Science Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and subsequently lyophilized. The yield was 67 % (3.4 g) amino-HES10/0.4.

80.5 mg 4-(4-formyl-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)butyric acid (Calbiochem-Novabiochem, L  ufelfingen, CH) and 61 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 3 ml N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 45.4 μ l N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide were added. After incubation at 21 $^{\circ}$ C for 30 min, 0.3 g of amino-HES10/0.4 were added. After shaking for 22 h at 22 $^{\circ}$ C, the reaction mixture was added to 23 ml of ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 $^{\circ}$ C, re-dissolved in a mixture of 2 ml water and 1 ml DMF and precipitated again as described above. The reaction product was collected by centrifugation as described, re-dissolved in 10 ml water, dialysed for 1 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized.

Example 1.9: Synthesis of aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch from amino functionalized hydroxyethyl starch and 4-formylbenzoic acid

Oxo-HES10/0.4 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.4) was prepared by Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D; according to DE 196 28 705 A1.

The molecular weight of the HES10/0.4 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 14.5 kD and the DS was 0.41.

5.1 g (0.51 mmol) of oxo-HES10/0.4 were dissolved in 15 ml anhydrous dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO, Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and added dropwise under nitrogen to a solution of 5.1 ml (51 mmol) 1,4-diaminobutane in 10 ml anhydrous dimethyl sulfoxide and stirred at 40 $^{\circ}$ C for 19 h. The reaction mixture was added to a mixture of 80 ml ethanol and 80 ml acetone. The resulting precipitate was separated by centrifugation, washed with a mixture of 20 ml ethanol and 20 ml acetone and re-dissolved in 80 ml water. The solution was dialyzed for 4 days against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Science Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and subsequently lyophilized. The yield was 67 % (3.4 g) amino-HES10/0.4.

150 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 230 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 10 ml N,N-dimethylformamide (peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 204 μ l

N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide were added. After incubation at 21 °C for 30 min, 1 g of the amino-HES10/0.4 were added. After shaking for 19 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 84 ml of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, re-dissolved in 50 ml water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized.

Example 1.10: Synthesis of aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch by periodate oxidation of hydroxyethyl starch selectively oxidized at its reducing end

Oxo-HES10/0.4 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.4) was prepared by Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D; according to DE 196 28 705 A1.

The molecular weight of the HES10/0.4 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 10.5 kD and the DS was 0.41.

300 mg of oxo-HES10/0.4 were dissolved in 15 ml 20 mM sodium phosphate buffer, pH 7.2. 64.2 mg sodium periodate (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 15 ml of the same buffer. Both solutions were mixed and after incubation for 30 min at 21 °C, 2 ml glycerol were added and the reaction mixture was incubated at 21 °C for 10 min. The reaction mixture was dialysed for 24 h against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized.

Example 2: Synthesis of G-CSF conjugates by reductive amination

G-CSF is a purified G-CSF having essentially the same characteristics as the commercially available product Neupogen® (Amgen, München, D).

**Example 2.1(a): Synthesis of G-CSF-conjugates by reductive amination with hydroxyethyl starch with non-oxidized reducing end at pH = 7.4
(Comparative Example)**

In Example 2.1, it was tried to use the synthesis method of WO 03/074087 (example 12, page 22 - 23) for the production of a HES-G-CSF conjugate.

- 5 To 3.33 μ l of an aqueous solution of G-CSF (Neupogen® from Amgen, München, D, or Granocyte® from Aventis Pharma AG, Zürich, CH, respectively, 3 mg/ml) in 0.1 M sodium phosphate buffer with pH 7.4, 3.33 μ l of a solution of HES10/0.4 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.4, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D, 79 mg/ml) in the same buffer were added. To this mixture, 3.33 μ l of a 60 mM solution of sodium
10 cyanoborohydride in the same buffer was added, and the resulting mixture was incubated for 4 h at 22 °C. Subsequently, another 3.33 μ l of the freshly prepared 60 mM sodium cyanoborohydride solution were added. During the incubation time of 30 h, altogether 5 portions of 3.33 μ l of the freshly prepared 60 mM sodium cyanoborohydride solution were added. The reaction mixture was analysed by gel electrophoresis. No reaction was
15 observed.

Example 2.1(b): Synthesis of G-CSF-conjugates by reductive amination with hydroxyethyl starch with non-oxidized reducing end at pH = 5.0 to 9.2

20 **(Comparative Example)**

- To 3.33 μ L of an aqueous solution of G-CSF (3 mg/mL) in a given buffer, 3.33 μ l of a HES solution (300 mg/ml) in the same buffer were added. The mixture was cooled to 4 °C, and 3.33 μ l of a 60 mM solution of sodium cyanoborohydride in the same buffer at 4 °C
25 were added, and the resulting mixture was incubated for 20 h at 4 °C.

The following HES preparations and buffer were employed:

- a) Buffer: 0.1 M sodium acetate buffer pH 5.0
30 - HES10/0.4 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.4, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D). The molecular weight of the HES10/0.4 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 8.5 kD and the DS was 0.41.

HES10/0.7 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.7, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D). The molecular weight of the HES10/0.7 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 10.5 kD and the DS was 0.76.

5 - HES50/0.4 (MW = 50 kD, DS = 0.4, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D). The molecular weight of the HES50/0.4 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 57 kD and the DS was 0.41.

- HES50/0.7 (MW = 50 kD, DS = 0.7, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D). The molecular weight of the HES50/0.7 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 47 kD and the DS was 0.76.

b) Buffer: 0.1 M sodium phosphate buffer pH 7.2

- HES10/0.7 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.7, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D). The molecular weight of the HES10/0.7 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 10.5 kD and the DS was 0.76.

c) Buffer: 0.1 M sodium borate buffer pH 8.3

- HES10/0.7 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.7, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D). The molecular weight of the HES10/0.7 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 10.5 kD and the DS was 0.76.

d) Buffer: 0.2 M potassium borate buffer pH 9.2

- HES10/0.7 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.7, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D). The molecular weight of the HES10/0.7 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 10.5 kD and the DS was 0.76.

Each reaction mixture was analysed by gel electrophoresis. No or negligible conjugation was observed (gel scans for reactions b) to d) not shown).

30

Example 2.2: **Synthesis of G-CSF-conjugates by reductive amination with hydroxyethyl starch with oxidized reducing end at pH = 5.0 to 9.2**
(Comparative Example)

To 3.33 μ L of an aqueous solution of G-CSF (3 mg/ml) in a given buffer, 3.33 μ l of a solution of oxo-HES (300 mg/ml) in the same buffer were added. The mixture was cooled to 4 °C, and 3.33 μ l of a 60 mM solution of sodium cyanoborohydride in the same buffer at 4 °C were added, and the mixture was incubated for 17 h at 4 °C.

The following HES preparations and buffer were employed:

a) Buffer: 0.1 M sodium acetate buffer pH 5.0

10 - oxo-HES10/0.7 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.7, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D). The molecular weight of the HES10/0.7 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 14.5 kD and the DS was 0.76.

- oxo-HES50/0.4 (MW = 50 kD, DS = 0.4, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D). The molecular weight of the HES50/0.4 when measured with 15 LALLS-GPC was 42 kD and the DS was 0.41.

- oxo-HES50/0.7 (MW = 50 kD, DS = 0.7, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D). The molecular weight of the HES50/0.7 when measured with 20 LALLS-GPC was 57 kD and the DS was 0.76.

b) Buffer: 0.1 M sodium phosphate buffer pH 7.2

- HES10/0.7 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.7, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D). The molecular weight of the HES10/0.7 when measured with 25 LALLS-GPC was 10.5 kD and the DS was 0.76.

c) Buffer: 0.1 M sodium borate buffer pH 8.3

- HES10/0.7 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.7, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D). The molecular weight of the HES10/0.7 when measured with 30 LALLS-GPC was 10.5 kD and the DS was 0.76.

d) Buffer: 0.2 M potassium borate buffer pH 9.2

- HES10/0.7 (MW = 10 kD, DS = 0.7, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D). The molecular weight of the HES10/0.7 when measured with LALLS-GPC was 10.5 kD and the DS was 0.76.

- 5 Each reaction mixture was analysed by gel electrophoresis. No or negligible conjugation was observed (gel scans for reactions b) to d) not shown).

Oxidation of HES10/0.4 (MW = 8.4 kD, DS = 0.41 was carried out by Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D; according to DE 196 28 705 A1.

10

Example 2.3: Synthesis of G-CSF-conjugates by reductive amination with aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch synthesized by periodate oxidation

- 15 To 3.33 µl of an aqueous solution of G-CSF (Granocyte® from Aventis Pharma AG, Zürich, CH, and Neupogen® from Amgen, München, D, respectively, 3 mg/mL) in 0.1 M sodium acetate buffer pH 5.0, 3.33 µl of a solution of an aldehyde-HES (79 mg/mL) in the same buffer were added. To the mixture 3.33 µL of a 60 mM solution of sodium cyanoborohydride in the same buffer were added and the mixture was incubated for 25 h at
20 21°C. The reaction mixture was analysed by gel electrophoresis.

The following aldehyde functionalized HES conjugates were employed:

- (i-N) prepared with Neupogen® according to Example 1.1(a) hereinabove;
(ii-N) prepared with Neupogen® according to Example 1.1(b) hereinabove;
25 (iii-N) prepared with Neupogen® according to Example 1.2(a) hereinabove;
(iv-N) prepared with Neupogen® according to Example 1.2(b) hereinabove;
(i-G) prepared with Granocyte® according to Example 1.1(a) hereinabove;
(ii-G) prepared with Granocyte® according to Example 1.1(b) hereinabove;
(iii-G) prepared with Granocyte® according to Example 1.2(a) hereinabove;
30 (iv-G) prepared with Granocyte® according to Example 1.2(b) hereinabove.

Example 2.4: Synthesis of G-CSF-conjugates by reductive amination with aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch synthesized by conjugation of hydroxyethyl starch to a formyl-carboxylic acid

35

To 3.33 μ l of an aqueous solution of G-CSF (3 mg/ml) in 0.1 M sodium acetate buffer pH 5.0, 3.33 μ l of a solution of an aldehydo-HES (118.5 mg/mL) in the same buffer were added and cooled to 4 °C. To the mixture 3.33 μ l of a 60 mM solution of sodium cyanoborohydride in the same buffer at 4 °C were added and the mixture was incubated for 17 h at 4 °C. The reaction mixture was analysed by gel electrophoresis.

The following aldehyde functionalized HES conjugates were employed:

- (v) prepared according to Example 1.4 hereinabove;
- (vi) prepared according to Example 1.5 hereinabove;
- 10 (vii) prepared according to Example 1.6 hereinabove;
- (viii) prepared according to Example 1.7 hereinabove;
- (ix) prepared according to Example 1.8 hereinabove.

15 **Example 2.5: Synthesis of G-CSF-conjugates by reductive amination with aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch synthesized by conjugation of hydroxyethyl starch to formyl-carboxylic acid**

To 2.5 ml of an aqueous solution of G-CSF (2.27 mg/ml) in 0.1 M sodium acetate buffer pH 5.0, 136 mg aldehydo-HES10/0.4, prepared as described in Example 1.3 hereinabove, were added, and the solution was cooled to 0 °C. To the mixture 2.5 ml of an ice-cold 40 mM solution of sodium cyanoborohydride in the same buffer were added and the mixture was incubated for 17 h at 4 °C. The reaction mixture was analysed by gel electrophoresis.

25

Example 2.6: Synthesis of various protein conjugates by reductive amination with aldehyde functionalized hydroxyethyl starch synthesized according to Examples 1.9 and 1.10, respectively

30 To **w** μ l (see Table I hereinunder) of a solution of the **Protein P** (see Table I hereinunder) in 0.1 M sodium acetate buffer pH 5.0 (**x** mg/ml; see Table I hereinunder) **y** μ l (see Table I hereinunder) of a solution of the HES-derivative (synthesized as described in Examples 1.9 or 1.10) in the same buffer (200 mg/mL) were added. The mixture was cooled to 4 °C and **z** μ l of a 120 mM solution of sodium cyanoborohydride in the same buffer at 4 °C were

added and the mixture was incubated for 24 h at 4 °C. The crude reaction mixture was analysed by gel electrophoresis. A successful conjugation was observed for all proteins, as indicated by the migration of the protein bands to higher molecular weights (see Figures 7 to 11). The increased band-width is due to the molecular weight distribution of the HES derivatives used and the number of HES derivatives linked to the protein.

Table I: Experiments carried out according to Example 2.6

Entry	Protein P	w	x	y	z
1	rhIL-2 (Strathmann Biotec, Hamburg, D)	15	1	4.41	3.88
2	rhIFN-alpha (Strathmann Biotec, Hamburg, D)	15	1	3.91	3.78
3	rhIL-3 (Strathmann Biotec, Hamburg, D)	10	1	3.34	2.67
4	Superoxide Dismutase SOD (from bovine erythrocytes, Sigma, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D)	6.67	3	3.21	1.97
5	Myoglobin (from equine skeletal muscle, Sigma, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D)	6.67	3	5	2.33
6	rhEPO	6.67	3	3.34	2
7	rhAT III (ATryn® GTC Biotherapeutics, Framingham, MA, USA)	6.67	3	1.73	1.68
8	rhIFN-beta	40	0.5	5	9
9	BSA (Frakt. V, Carl Roth GmbH, Karlsruhe, D)	6.67	3	1.49	1.63

The IFN beta used was a rhIFN beta 1a produced in CHO cells containing di- and triantennary carbohydrate side chains and N-acetyllactosamine repeats.

The EPO used was recombinantly produced EPO having the amino acid sequence of human EPO and essentially the same characteristics as the commercially available Erypo® (ORTHO BIOTECH, Jansen-Cilag) or NeoRecormon® (Roche), cf. EP 0 148 605, EP 0 205 564, EP 0 411 678.

Example 3:

Analysis of the G-CSF-conjugate obtained in Example 2.5

A. Purification

5 G-CSF being purified hG-CSF having essentially the same characteristics as the commercial product Neupogen® was obtained and one aliquot was kept unmodified as a control.

1. Buffer exchange of G-CSF and the G-CSF-conjugate samples before purification by anion-exchange chromatography

10

The HES-modified G-CSF sample or unmodified G-CSF (as a control) (0.5 – 5 mg protein) were subjected to buffer exchange using Vivaspin 6 Concentrator units (10.000 MWCO PES, Vivascience, Cat. Nr. VS0602). Samples were concentrated to 0.5-0.7 ml and were diluted to 5 ml with 10 mM Na-phosphate buffer pH 7.2. Each sample was
15 subjected 3 times to this concentration/buffer exchange cycle.

2. Anion exchange chromatography of G-CSF and HES-modified forms thereof on a DEAE-Sepharose column

20

The G-CSF samples after HES-modification and, for comparison, samples of unmodified G-CSF were purified and analyzed by anion exchange chromatography at room temperature by using an ÄKTA explorer 10 system as described. Aliquots of G-CSF either before or after HESylation were dialyzed by ultrafiltration against said
25 buffer A (10 mM Na-phosphate, pH 7.2) or were diluted with about 13 volumes of buffer A. The column containing 2 ml DEAE-Sepharose (DEAE-Sepharose CL-6B, Pharmacia Kat. Nr. 17-0710-01) was regenerated by applying 5.0 column volumes (CV) of 6.5 M guanidine/HCl, 5.0 CV buffer A, 5.0 CV of buffer C (1.5 M NaCl in 10 mM Na-phosphate, pH 7.2) and then 10 CV of buffer A. The samples (0.8 – 4.5 ml in 10 mM Na-phosphate buffer pH 7.2) were then injected by using a flow rate of
30 0.6 ml/min. Following washing of the sample loop with 10 ml (2 ml sample loop) or 20 ml (5 ml sample loop) buffer A, depending on the sample applied, the column was further washed with 0-22 CV of buffer A (flow rate = 0.8 ml/min). Elution was performed by applying a linear gradient from 0-100% buffer B over 5 CV and an isocratic run with 2.5 CV of 100% buffer B using a flow rate of 0.6 ml/min. The

column was re-equilibrated with 5 CV of buffer A and was regenerated as detailed above by using a flow rate of 1 ml/min.

If required, samples were concentrated using a Vivaspin concentrator and buffer exchange was performed as described above. Samples were stored at 0-8°C in 10 mM Na-Acetate buffer pH 4.0 before or after sterile filtration using a 0.2 µm filtration unit, Corning, Cat. No. 431215). The following samples were prepared for in-vitro bioassays and for further analytical analysis. Protein concentration was determined as described in section B1 below:

I. 0401-15/A33, 0.44 mg/ml, volume = 500 µl
G-CSF (E.coli)

II. 0401-13/A32, 0.28 mg/ml, volume = 900 µl
G-CSF (E.coli) HES-modified

III. 0401-28/A58, 0.60 mg/ml, volume = 350 µl
Neupogen

IV. 0401-28/A57, 0.50 mg/ml, volume = 400 µl
Neulasta

B. Analysis

Aliquots of the sample were analyzed for their protein content and for modifications.

1. G-CSF protein quantitation by RP-HPLC

G-CSF protein content of the sample was quantitated using the unmodified protein preparation (concentration : 0.453 mg/ml) as a standard.

A Dionex HPLC system consisting of a pump P 680 A HPG, degassing unit Degasys DG 1210, an autosampler and injector ASI-100, a sample loop 250 µl, a thermostated column department TCC 100 along with a UV/Vis-Detektor UVD170U equipped with a Software Chromeleon Chromatography Management System was used.

A precolumn CC 8/4 Nucleosil 120-5 C4, Macherey-Nagel, Cat. No. 721889, and a separation column 40 C-4 Nucleosil MPN, 5 μ m, 125 x 4 mm RP-column (Macherey-Nagel, ordering No.7200 45.40) were used. Solvent A was H₂O plus 0,06 % (v/v) trifluoroacetic acid and solvent B was 90 % acetonitrile in H₂O, containing 0,06 % (v/v) trifluoroacetic acid; flow rate was : 1 ml/min.

UV detection was at 214 ,221, 260 and at 280 nm wavelength.

- 10 Samples of approximately 10 – 20 μ g were injected into a RP-HPLC column. The following gradient was used:

0-5 min: 0-10 % B
- 17 min: 10-45 % B
- 35 min: 45-80 % B
15 - 36 min: 80-100 % B
- 38 min: 100 % B
- 39 min: 10 % B
- 45 min: 10 % B

- 20 The resulting peak area at the elution position of the standard G-CSF preparation was used and compared to the reference standard by comparing the peak appearing at around 29min at 280 nm wavelength.

2. Reduction + carboxamidomethylation of G-CSF protein

25

- Aliquots from the G-CSF protein samples were reduced and carboxamidomethylated as described elsewhere (Guillermina Forno, Mariela Bollati Fogolin, Marcos Oggero, Ricardo Kratje, Marina Etcheverrigaray, Harald S. Conradt, Manfred Nimtz (2004) N- and O-linked carbohydrates and glycosylation site occupancy in recombinant human granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor secreted by a Chinese hamster ovary cell line; European J. Biochem, 273(5), 907-919). Carboxamidomethylation leads to modified cystein residues. Endoproteinase Glu-C digestion of the carboxamidomethylated protein was performed in 25 mM NH₄HCO₃ containing 1 M urea at pH 7,8 and using an enzyme /substrate ratio of 0.2:10 for 18 – 24 hours.

35

3. Separation of Endo-Glu-C peptides by RP-HPLC

The peptides generated by the Endo-Glu-C digestion were separated on a Dionex HPLC system consisting of a pump P 680 A HPG, degassing unit Degasys DG 1210, an autosampler and injector ASI-100, a sample loop 250 μ l, a thermostatted column department TCC 100 along with a UV/Vis-Detektor UVD170U equipped with a Software Chromeleon Chromatography Management System was used.

A precolumn CC 8/4 Nucleosil 120-5 C4, Macherey-Nagel, Cat. No. 721889, and a separation column 40 C-4 Nucleosil MPN, 5 μ m, 125 x 4 mm RP-column (Macherey-Nagel, ordering No.7200 45.40) were used. Solvent A was H₂O plus 0,06 % (v/v) trifluoroacetic acid and solvent B was 90 % acetonitrile in H₂O, containing 0,06 % (v/v)trifluoroacetic acid; flow rate was : 1 ml/min. The following gradient was applied:

0 – 5 min: 10 % B
- 17 min: 45 % B
- 65 min: 100 % B
- 67 min: 100 % B
- 69 min: 10 % B
- 75 min: 10 % B

UV detection was at 214 ,221, 260 and at 280 nm wavelength. Peptides generated by the Endo-Glu-C digestion were separable (data not shown).

4. Analysis of proteolytic peptides by Matrix-Assisted Laser Desorption/Ionization Time-of-Flight Mass Spectrometry (MALDI/TOF/TOF-MS)

Mass spectrometry was used to detect the intact N-terminus of G-CSF's in the different samples prepared. Samples (3 – 5 μ g) resulting from Endoproteinase Glu-C digestions of reduced and carboxamidomethylated protein samples were used directly for MS-analysis (without the RP-HPLC of step 3) and purified using ZipTip pipette tips containing C18 reversed-phase material according to the manufacturer's instructions. After washing

with 0.1% (v/v) formic acid, elution of peptides was performed with 10 μ l 0.1% (v/v) formic acid in 60% (v/v) acetonitrile.

Proteolytic (Endo-Glu-C) peptide fragments were analyzed with a Bruker ULTRAFLEX time-of-flight (TOF/TOF) instrument in the linear positive ion mode using a matrix of 22.4 mg 3,5-dimethoxy-4-hydroxy-cinnamic acid in 400 μ l acetonitrile and 600 μ l 0.1% (v/v) trifluoroacetic acid in H₂O; (glyco)-peptides were measured using a matrix of 19 mg α -cyano-4-hydroxycinnamic acid in the same solvent mixture using the reflectron for enhanced resolution. Sample solutions of 1 μ l and an approximate concentration of 1-10 pmol. μ l⁻¹ were mixed with equal amounts of the respective matrix. This mixture was spotted onto a stainless steel target and dried at room temperature before analysis. Spectra were recorded in the mass range 900 – 5000 dalton. The following Table correlates the expected masses with the respective G-CSF peptides.

Table: Theoretical (monoisotopic) masses of Endo-Glu-C peptides resulting from G-CSF

Mass (Dalton)	Observed in this study	aa position	artif.modification(s)	peptide sequence
2132.11	+	1-20	Cys_CAM: pos18 m/z 2189.13	MTPLGPASSLPQSFLKCLE
1512.81	+	21-34	-----	QVRKIQGDGAALQE
1534.74	+	35-47	Cys_CAM: pos 37, 43 m/z 1648.78	KLCATYKLCHPEE
4942.63	-	48-94	Cys_CAM: Pos 65, 75 m/z 5056.68	LVLGHSLGIPWAPLSSCP S QALQLAGCLSQLHSGFLYQ GLLQALE
502.25	-	95-99	-----	GISPE
2835.37	-	100-124	-----	LGPTLDTLQLDVADFATTIW QQMEE
4026.08	+	125-163	-----	LGMAPALQPTQGAMPAFASA FQRRAGGVLVASHLQSFLE
1438.83	+	164-175	-----	VSRYVLRHLAQP

Cystein residues were carboxamidomethylated; peptides marked as fat were detected in MALDI/TOF spectrum of the non modified G-CSF.

The N-terminal Endo-Glu-C peptide (MTPLGPASSLPQSFLKCLE; m/z 2189.1) comprising position 1-20 of the protein was detected in MALDI/TOF-MS spectra of samples after proteolytic treatment of G-CSF with endoproteinase Glu-C as described above.

Results :

1. Purification of G-CSF and HES modified variant

HES-modified G-CSF and non modified G-CSF were subjected to purification using a DEAE-Sepharose CL-6B column as described under A4.

In the case of the unmodified sample 0401-15/A33, no significant absorption at 280 nm was detected in the flow-through and the protein eluted at a concentration of 40-50% buffer B (0.16-0.20 M NaCl) in a volume of 6 ml, with a specific peak area of 660 mAU x ml x mg⁻¹ at 280 nm.

The sample (HES-modified G-CSF) eluted over a large range of the gradient at a concentration of buffer B from 20-80% (0.08-0.32 M NaCl) in a volume of 12 ml. About 90% of the total peak area detected at 280 nm was found in the flow-through, containing about 50% of the total protein with an apparently slightly higher molecular mass when compared to the eluted protein, as detected by SDS-PAGE analysis as shown in Figure 13.

Recovery of proteins was calculated based on the peak area (A_{280 nm}) of the eluting fractions compared to the non modified G-CSF protein.

Table 1: Comparison of the peak areas at 280 nm detection

DEAE-Sepharose Run no.	Description	Calculated protein amount for injection	Eluate Area [280 nm] (mAU x ml)	Yield in eluate compared to eluate from run DS01 A33 **
DS01 A33	G-CSF	0.5 mg	330	(0.50 mg)
DS03 A32	HES-modified G-CSF	4.0 mg	1560	2.36 mg

** RP-HPLC quantitation of the protein confirmed these results

II. Analysis of proteins by peptide mapping and MALDI/TOF MS after treatment with endoproteinase Glu-C

- 5 The N-terminal peptide resulting from endoproteinase Glu-C digestion of both the carbox-amidomethylated unmodified G-CSF (Figure 14) and the market product Neupogen (data not shown), was clearly detected by MALDI/TOF-MS (*MTPLGPASSLPQSFLK*C*LE, m/z 2189.1; cystein carboxamidomethylated). This signal was absent in samples subjected to HES-modification (Figure 15) and in Neulasta (data not shown), indicating modification
10 of this peptide.

N-terminal sequencing of HES-modified G-CSF revealed a blocked N-terminus suggesting that in fact the N-terminal methionine residue of this protein derivative is modified by HAS derivative.

Sample code	description	MALDI/TOF spectrum
G-CSF A32	HES-modified G-CSF	I/4810
G-CSF A33	G-CSF	I/4811
G-CSF A57	Neulasta	I/4812
G-CSF A58	Neupogen	I/4813
G-CSF A08	G-CSF	I/4815

References:

Guillermina Forno, Mariela Bollati Fogolin, Marcos Oggero, Ricardo Kratje, Marina Etcheverrigaray, Harald S. Conradt, Manfred Nimtz (2004) N- and O-linked carbohydrates and glycosylation site occupancy in recombinant human granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor secreted by a Chinese hamster ovary cell line
20 *Eur. J. Biochem*, 271 (5), 907-919

Nimtz, M., Grabenhorst, E., Conradt, H.S., Sanz, L. & Calvete, J.J. (1999) Structural characterization of the oligosaccharide chains of native and crystallized boar seminal
25 plasma spermadhesin PSP-I and PSP-II glycoforms. *Eur. J. Biochem*. 265, 703-718.

Nimtz, M., Martin, W., Wray, V., Klöppel, K.-D., Agustin, J. & Conradt, H.S. (1993) Structures of sialylated oligosaccharides of human erythropoietin expressed in recombinant BHK-21 cells. *Eur J. Biochem.* **213**, 39-56

5

Nimtz, M., Noll G., Pâques, E. & Conradt, H.S. (1990) Carbohydrate structures of human tissue plasminogen activator variant expressed in recombinant Chinese hamster ovary cells. *FEBS Lett.* **271**, 14-18.

10 Schröter, S., Derr, P., Conradt, H.S., Nimtz, M., Hale, G. & Kirchhoff, C. (1999) Male-specific modification of human CD52. *J. Biol. Chem.* **274**, 29862-29873

E. Grabenhorst and H.S. Conradt (1999) The Cytoplasmic, Transmembrane and the Stem Regions of Glycosyltransferases specify their in vivo functional sublocalization and stability in the Golgi
15 *J. Biol. Chem.*, **274**, 36107-36116

E. Grabenhorst, A. Hoffmann, M. Nimtz, G. Zettlmeißl and H. S. Conradt (1995)
Construction of stable BHK-21 cells coexpressing human secretory glycoproteins and
20 human Gal β 1-4GlcNAc-R. □2,6-sialyltransferase: □2,6-linked NeuAc is preferably attached to the Gal β 1-4GlcNAc β 1-2Man β 1-3-branch of biantennary oligosaccharides from secreted recombinant -trace protein.
Eur. J. Biochem., **232**, 718-725

25

Example 4: **In vitro results of the G-CSF-conjugate obtained in Example 2.5 and purified according to Example 3: Mitogenicity of G-CSF variants for mouse NFS-60 cells**

30 G-CSF is known for its specific effects on the proliferation, differentiation, an activation of hematopoietic cells of the neutrophilic granulocyte lineage. The mitogenic capacity of G-CSF variants was tested using mouse NFS-60 cells (N. Shirafuji et al., Exp. Hematol. 1989, 17, 116-119). Cells grown in RPMI medium with 10% fetal calf serum (Gibco

INVITROGEN GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) containing 5-10 % WEHI-3B (DSMZ, Braunschweig, D; cultivated as described by the DSMZ) conditioned medium as source of exogenous IL-3 were harvested by centrifugation, washed and aliquoted at 100,000 cells per well in a 24-well plate. Cells were allowed to adapt for 1 hour at 37 °C in RPMI medium without WEHI-3B conditioned media before G-CSF growth factors sample diluted in the same media were added. NFS-60 cells were exposed to purified G-CSF variants for 3 days at 37°C and then the cells were electronically counted (Casy TT Cell Counter, Schärfe System, Reutlingen, D). The results are summarised in Figure 12. As seen in Figure 12, the different G-CSF variants (0.5 - 50 pg/ml) were able to stimulate an increase in the number of cells after 3 days compared to medium that did not contain added growth factors.

Unmodified control proteins G-CSF/A33 and G-CSF/A58 stimulated cells at a very similar extent (ED₅₀=5 - 10 pg/ml) while G-CSF conjugates G-CSF/A32 and G-CSF/A57 showed only a minor decrease in activity if compared to the unmodified version (ED₅₀=10 - 25 pg/ml).

Example 5 A1AT (α 1AT, alpha1aT) conjugates synthesized via reductive amination

Example 5.1 Synthesis of amino-HES (A) from oxidized HES

6.09 g of oxo-HES (MW = 57,000 D, DS = 0.76, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D, prepared according to DE 196 28 705 A1) were heated over night at 80 °C in vacuo, dissolved under nitrogen in 32 ml dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D,) and 1.22 ml of 1,4-diaminobutane (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After stirring at 40 °C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 150 ml of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, washed with 40 ml of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v) and collected by centrifugation. The crude product was dissolved in 80 ml water, dialysed for 4 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 82 %.

Example 5.2 Synthesis of aldehydo-HES (A) from amino-HES (A) of example 5.1

125 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 174 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich,
5 Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 38 ml N,N-
dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL), and 155 µL
N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D)
were added. After incubation at 21 °C for 30 min, 3.8 g of amino-HES (A) (prepared as
described in example 5.1) were added. After shaking for 19 h at 22 °C, the reaction
10 mixture was added to 160 ml of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The
precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, re-dissolved in 20 ml N,N-
dimethylformamide and precipitated with 80 ml of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and
ethanol (v/v) as described above in example 5.1. After centrifugation, the precipitate was
dissolved in 50 ml water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD
15 cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of
isolated product was 77 %.

Example 5.3 Synthesis of amino-HES (B) from oxidized HES

20 10 g of oxo-HES (MW = 57,000 D, DS = 0.76, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH,
Rosbach-Rodheim, D, prepared according to DE 196 28 705 A1) were heated over night at
80 °C in vacuo, dissolved under nitrogen in 52 ml dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-
Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 2 ml of 1,4-diaminobutane (Fluka, Sigma-
Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After stirring at 40 °C for 17 h the
25 reaction mixture was added to 350 ml of ice-cold 2-propanol (Carl Roth GmbH + Co. KG,
Karlsruhe, D). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, washed
with 80 ml of ice-cold 2-propanol and collected by centrifugation. The crude product was
dissolved in 80 ml water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD
cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of
30 isolated product was 85 %.

Example 5.4 Synthesis of aldehydo-HES (B) from amino-HES (B) of example 5.3

153 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 241 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 51 ml N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 170 μ L N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, 5.1 g of amino-HES (B) (prepared as described in example 5.3) were added. After shaking for 16 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 360 ml of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, re-dissolved in 50 ml water and precipitated with 360 ml of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v) as described above in example 5.1. After centrifugation, the precipitate was dissolved in 50 ml water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 87 %.

15 **Example 5.5 Conjugation of aldehydo-HES (A) and (B) to A1AT by reductive amination**

A mixture of 189 mg aldehydo-HES (B) (prepared as described in example 5.4) and 172 mg aldehydo-HES (A) (prepared as described in example 5.2) were dissolved in 2.88 ml reaction buffer (0.1 M sodium phosphate buffer, 150 mM sodium chloride, pH 7.2). At 20 °C, 1.67 ml of a 60 mM sodium cyanoborohydride solution in the same buffer were added followed by 0.455 ml of an A1AT solution ($c(A1AT) = 11.0$ mg/ml in 20 mM sodium phosphate buffer, 150 mM sodium chloride, pH 7.2, A1AT= rh A1AT provided by GTC Biotherapeutics Inc., Framingham, MA, lot No. 080604A). The mixture was incubated at 20 °C. After 17 h, additional 6.7 mg sodium cyanoborohydride dissolved in 200 μ L of the reaction buffer were added and the mixture was incubated for additional 24 h at the same temperature. 10 μ L of this solution were analysed after a total incubation time of 25 h by gel electrophoresis (see Figure 16)

30 **Example 5.6 Conjugation of HES to A1AT by reductive amination (Reaction control)**

362 mg HES (MW = 56,000 D, DS = 0.41, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D) were dissolved in 2.88 ml reaction buffer (0.1 M sodium phosphate buffer,

150 mM sodium chloride, pH 7.2). At 20 °C, 1.67 ml of a 60 mM sodium cyanoborohydride solution in the same buffer were added followed by 0.455 ml of a A1AT solution (c (A1AT) = 11,0 mg/ml in 20 mM sodium phosphate buffer, 150 mM sodium chloride, pH 7.2, α 1AT= rh α 1AT provided by GTC Biotherapeutics Inc., Framingham, MA, lot No. 080604A). The mixture was incubated at 20 °C. After 17 h, additional 6.7 mg sodium cyanoborohydride dissolved in 200 μ l of the reaction buffer were added and the mixture was incubated for additional 24 h at the same temperature. 10 μ L of this solution were analysed after a total incubation time of 25 h by gel electrophoresis (see Figure 17).

10 Example 5.7 Purification of HES-A1AT conjugate by Ion Exchange Chromatography (IEC)

Conjugates of A1AT were purified by Ion Exchange Chromatography on a *HiTrap Q HP* column using an ÄKTA-Explorer chromatography system (both from Amersham Biosciences). The purification was performed in accordance with the isolation of A1AT from human plasma as described in "Chen, Hammond, Lang and Lebing, Purification of α ₁Proteinase Inhibitor from Human Plasma Fraction IV-1 by Ion Exchange Chromatography, VoxSanguinis 1998, 74, 232-241".

20 Sample preparation: buffer exchange on a *HiPrep 26/10 Desalting* column (Amersham Biosciences) in combination with the ÄKTA-Explorer chromatography system using 20 mM sodium phosphate, 20 mM sodium chloride, pH 8 as eluent.

Buffer exchange was performed after dilution of the crude reaction mixture (preparation as described in example 5.5, approximately 5 ml) with desalted water to a final volume of 10 ml using the following parameters:

Column:	HiPrep 26/10 Desalting
Flow rate:	10 ml / min
30 Eluent:	20 mM sodium phosphate, 20 mM sodium chloride, pH 8
Sample volume:	10 ml
Eluate fractionation:	2.5 ml

Equilibration: 5 column volumes
Length of elution: 2 column volumes

5 The first 14 ml of eluent were pooled, and binding buffer was added to yield a final volume of 20 ml. This solution, containing approximately 5 mg protein, was purified by IEC using the following parameters:

Column:	HiTrap Q HP 1 ml
Flow rate:	1 ml / min
10 Binding Buffer (BB):	20 mM sodium phosphate, 20 mM sodium chloride, pH 8
Elution Buffer (EB):	20 mM sodium phosphate, 1 M sodium chloride, 15 pH 8
Sample volume:	20 ml
Flow trough fractionation:	2 ml
Eluate fractionation:	1 ml
Start concentration EB:	0 %
20 Equilibration:	5 column volumes
Wash out unbound sample:	15 ml
Target concentration EB:	15 %
Length of gradient:	20 ml

25 The fractions collected after chromatography were analysed by SDS-Page. Fractions containing HES-A1AT conjugate were pooled (elution volume from 40 to 47 ml corresponding to fractions B1 – C6, see figure 17). In some of the pooled fractions a small amount of unreacted A1AT was detectable. The initial concentration of the pooled fraction after chromatography determined by BCA (Pierce Cat. No. 23225), using A1AT (provided
30 by GTC Biotherapeutics Inc., Framingham, MA, lot No. 080604A) as reference standard) was 170 µg/ml. After dilution and buffer exchange into 20 mM sodium phosphate, 150 mM sodium chloride, pH 7.2 the resulting protein concentration was 54.5 µg/ml (BCA (pierce with A1AT from GTC Biotheapeutics Inc., Framingham, MA, lot No. 080604A (as reference standard))). This final solution was used to determinate the inhibitory
35 efficiency of the conjugate.

Example 5.8 Determination of the in vitro inhibition capacity of HES-A1AT conjugate for human granulocyte elastase

- 5 Elastase Inhibitory activity tests of the conjugates were performed according to *Castillo et al., Anal. Biochem.* 1979, 99, 53-64 using a Tecan UV-VIS-Platereader Model Sunrise.

This assay is based on the release of p-nitroaniline from N-Met-O-succinyl-Ala-Ala-Pro-Val-p-NO₂-anilin catalyzed by elastase. This hydrolysis can be followed by the increase of
10 absorbance at 405 nm. The initial hydrolysis rate is in close correlation to the activity of the enzyme. The assay was carried out in absence and in the presence of different concentrations of the inhibitor to be tested. The decrease of enzyme activity according to the inhibitory activity of the substances tested is represented in a decrease of the slope in the A₄₀₅ versus time plot. The residual elastase activity in presence of a certain inhibitor
15 concentration is given by the slope of the inhibited curve divided by the slope of the uninhibited curve. There is a linear correlation between the residual enzyme activity and the inhibitor concentration. By using linear regression, a linear smooth line can be achieved and the residual enzyme activity for a given inhibitor concentration can be calculated. By this way the inhibitory activity (= 1-residual enzyme activitiy) of the same
20 concentration of different inhibitors can be compared (see figure 18).

The following parameters were used:

	Substrate concentration:	1.5 mM
25	Elastase activity:	7.5 mU
	Wavelength:	405 nm
	Temperature:	20 °C
	Time interval:	15 s
	Kinetic cycles:	25
30	Measure Mode:	Center

The assay solution consisted of 300 µl buffer (0.1 M Hepes, 0.5 M NaCl, 0.05 % (m/v) Triton X-100, pH 7.5) containing 10 % DMSO, 1.5 mM N-Met-O-succinyl-Ala-Ala-Pro-Val-p-NO₂-anilin, 7.5 mU Elastase and varying amounts of inhibitors.

Elastase was purchased from Serva Electrophoresis GmbH, Heidelberg. All other substances were purchased from Sigma Aldrich, Taufkirchen.

- 5 The inhibitory activity of the conjugate synthesized as described in example 5.5 was tested in comparison with Prolastin® HS (Bayer Vital GmbH, Leverkusen, Germany Lot No. PR4HA43) as reference and with A1AT (GTC Biotherapeutics Inc., Framingham, MA, lot No. 080604A) as starting material for the conjugation. The residual enzyme activity vs. concentration plot is given in figure 18. Linearity for all curves was $R^2 > 0.98$. In the below, IC_{50} -values and elastase inhibition for $c(\text{inhibitor}) = 1 \mu\text{g/ml}$ are given, as well as the inhibitory activity of starting material and conjugate in relation to the reference. Data outlined in the table below clearly demonstrate that the major part of the A1AT activity remained after conjugation with HES.

15

Table of Example 5.8

inhibitor	linear smooth line Equitation	IC_{50} [$\mu\text{g/ml}$]	elastase inhibition $c(\text{inhibitor}) =$ $1 \mu\text{g/ml}$ [%]	inhibition activity in relation to Prolastin [%]
Prolastin	$y = -0,6754x + 0,9627$	0,685	71,3	
A1AT	$y = -0,5046x + 0,9558$	0,903	54,9	77,0
HES-A1AT-conjugate	$y = -0,3757x + 0,9627$	1,232	41,3	57,9

Example 5.9 **Determination of the in-vivo half-life of HES-rh alpha1AT conjugate in comparison to rh alpha1AT and plasma derived h alpha1AT**

5 Female mice aged 8-10 weeks (BALB/cOlaHsd, Harlan GmbH, Borchen, Germany) were utilized as test organism (42 mice, 14 per sample). The "is bodyweight" of each animal was detected right before administration of the different sample solutions. 100 µl of a 50 µg/ml solution of the samples outlined below in a puffer pH = 7.2 (20 mmol sodium phosphate, 150 mmol sodium chloride) were injected intravenously in the tail vein of the
10 mice.

Sample 1: rh alpha1AT (GTC Biotherapeutics Inc., Framingham, MA, lot No. 080604A)

Sample 2: rh alpha1AT-HES conjugate as prepared in example 5.5

15 Sample 3: plasma derived h alpha1AT (SERVA Electrophoresis GmbH, Heidelberg, Germany)

At 1, 2, 4, 10, 24, 31,5 and 48, hours after injection, two mice of each group were killed and whole blood samples (~500µl) were withdrawn from the heart of the animals. Serum
20 was prepared using Microvette® 500 Z-Gel (Sarstedt, Nümbrecht, Germany). The serum samples were stored at -80 °C until the beginning of the alpha1AT concentration measurements.

alpha1AT concentrations were detected using a commercially available alpha1AT- ELISA
25 (Immundiagnostik, Bensheim, Germany) following the manufacturers instructions.

The results obtained demonstrate a significant plasma half-life increase for the rh alpha1AT-HES conjugate in comparison to the not modified rh alpha1AT starting material. The measured half-life of the conjugate is in the same range than the one of the plasma
30 derived h alpha1AT according to the following table.

Table of example 5.9: Plasma half-life of samples 1-3.

Sample No	Plasma half-life in mice [h]
1	1,2

2	3,6
3	3,2

Example 6 Synthesis of G-CSF-Conjugates**Example 6.1 Synthesis of the Aldehydo-HES Derivatives****Example 6.1(a) Synthesis of AminoHES10/0.4**

5.12 g of oxo HES10/0.4 (MW = 14,500 D, DS = 0.41, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D, prepared according to DE 196 28 705 A1) were heated over night at 80°C in vacuo and dissolved under nitrogen in 25 mL dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 5.13 mL of 1,4-diaminobutane were added. After stirring at 40°C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 150 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4°C, washed with 40 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v) and collected by centrifugation. The crude product was dissolved in 80 mL water, dialysed for 4 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 67%.

Example 6.1(b) Synthesis of AldehydoHES10/0.4

105 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 135 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 7 mL N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 135 µL N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, 0.7 g of aminoHES10/0.4 (synthesised as described in example 6.1(a)) were added. After shaking for 18 h at 22°C, the reaction mixture was added to 42 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4°C, re-dissolved in 5 mL DMF and precipitated with 42 mL ethanol/ acetone as described above. After centrifugation, the collected precipitate was dissolved with water, dialysed for 1 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 95%.

Example 6.1(c) Synthesis of AminoHES10/0.7

6.02 g of oxo-HES 10/0.7 (MW = 15,000 D, DS = 0.76, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D, according to DE 196 28 705) were dissolved under nitrogen in 32 mL dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 6.03 mL of 1,4-diaminobutane were added. After stirring at 40°C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 150 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4°C, washed with 40 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v) and collected by centrifugation. The crude product was dissolved in 80 mL water, dialysed for 4 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 52%.

Example 6.1(d) Synthesis of AldehydoHES10/0.7

150 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 230 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 10 mL N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 204 µL N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, 1 g of aminoHES10/0.7 (synthesised as described in example 6.1(c)) were added. After shaking for 19 h at 22°C, the reaction mixture was added to 84 mL of ice-cold 2-propanol. The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4°C, re-dissolved in 50 mL water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 83%.

Example 6.1(e) Synthesis of AminoHES30/0.4

5 g of oxo-HES 30/0.4 (MW = 28,000 D, DS = 0.41, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D, using molar ratios of the ingredients according to DE 196 28 705 A1) were heated over night at 80°C in vacuo and were then dissolved under nitrogen in 28 mL dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 1.67 mL of 1,4-diaminobutane were added. After stirring at 40°C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 175 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4°C. The crude product was dissolved in 40 mL water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5

kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was not determined.

Example 6.1(f) Synthesis of AldehydoHES30/0.4

130 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 153 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 36 mL N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 110 µL N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, 2.61 g of aminoHES30/0.4 (synthesised as described in example 6.1(e)) were added. After shaking for 22.5 h at 22°C, the reaction mixture was added to 160 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4°C and washed with an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). After centrifugation, the precipitate was dissolved in 30 mL water, dialysed for 1 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 81%.

Example 6.1(g) Synthesis of AminoHES30/0.7

5 g of oxo-HES 30/0.7 (MW = 31,000 D, DS = 0.76, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D, using molar ratios of the ingredient according to DE 196 28 705 A1) were heated over night at 80°C in vacuo and were then dissolved under nitrogen in 28 mL dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 1.67 mL of 1,4-diaminobutane were added. After stirring at 40°C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 175 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4°C. The crude product was dissolved in 40 mL water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was not determined.

Example 6.1(h) Synthesis of AldehydoHES30/0.7

122 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 144 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 34 mL N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 103 µL N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, 2.46 g of aminoHES30/0.7 (synthesised

as described in example 6.1(g)) were added. After shaking for 22.5 h at 22°C, the reaction mixture was added to 160 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4°C and washed with an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). After centrifugation, the precipitate was dissolved in 30 mL water, dialysed for 1 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 87%.

Example 6.1(i) Synthesis of AminoHES50/0.7

6.09 g of oxo-HES 50/0.7 (MW = 57,000 D, DS = 0.76, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D, using molar ratios of the ingredients according to DE 196 28 705 A1) were heated over night at 80°C in vacuo and were then dissolved under nitrogen in 32 mL dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 1.22 mL of 1,4-diaminobutane were added. After stirring at 40°C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 150 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4°C, washed with 40 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v) and collected by centrifugation. The crude product was dissolved in 80 mL water, dialysed for 4 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 82%.

Example 6.1(j) Synthesis of AldehydoHES50/0.7

125 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 174 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 38 mL N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 155 µL N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, 3.8 g of aminoHES50/0.7 (synthesised as described in example 6.1(i)) were added. After shaking for 19 h at 22°C, the reaction mixture was added to 160 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4°C, re-dissolved in 20 mL N,N-dimethylformamide and precipitated with 80 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v) as described above. After centrifugation, the precipitate was dissolved in 50 mL water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio

Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 77%.

5 **Example 6.2 Synthesis of the HES-G-CSF Conjugates by reductive amination**

Example 6.2(a) Buffer exchange A:

 33 mL of a 0.454 mg/mL solution of hG-CSF (purified hG-CSF having essentially the
10 same characteristics as the commercial product Neupogen in 10 mM sodium acetate, 50
 mg/mL sorbitol and 0.004% Tween 80 at pH 4.0 were concentrated by diafiltration at 0°C
 to 4 mL with a Vivaspin 15R concentrator (VS15RH11, 5KD MWCO, Vivascience AG,
 Hannover, D) and re-diluted to 15 mL with a 0.1 M sodium acetate buffer at pH 5.0. This
 diafiltration was repeated twice. The final concentration in the last diafiltration step was 3
15 mg/mL.

**Example 6.2(b) Reaction of hG-CSF with aldehydoHES derivatives of examples
 6.1(b), 6.1(d) and 6.1(j)**

20 To 1.67 mL of a solution of hG-CSF after buffer exchange into 0.1 M sodium acetate
 buffer, pH 5.0 (as described in example 6.2(a) above) 1.67 mL of a solution of the HES-
 derivative and 1.67 mL of a 60 mM solution of sodium cyanoborohydride, both in the
 same buffer, were added and the solution was incubated for 15.5 h at 4°C. All solutions
 were cooled to 0°C before mixing.

25 The following final HES concentrations were employed:

 39.4 mg/mL for the HES derivatives prepared according to example 6.1(b) and 6.1(d).

 197 mg/mL for the HES derivative prepared according to example 6.1(j).

 197 mg/mL HES50/0.7 (MW = 47,000 D, DS = 0.76, Supramol Parenteral Colloids
 GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D) as reaction control.

30 The reaction mixtures were analysed by gel electrophoresis (see figure 19).

Example 6.2(c) Buffer exchange B:

35 20 mL of a 0.454 mg/mL solution of hG-CSF (Purified hG-CSF having essentially the
 same characteristics as the commercial product Neupogen®) in 10 mM sodium acetate, 50
 mg/mL sorbitol and 0.004% Tween 80 at pH 4.0 was concentrated by diafiltration at 15°C
 to 4 mL with a Vivaspin 15R concentrator (VS15RH11, 5KD MWCO, Vivascience AG,
 Hannover, D) and re-diluted to 15 mL with a 0.1 M sodium acetate buffer at pH 5.0. This

diafiltration was repeated twice. The final concentration in the last diafiltration step was 1.5 mg/mL.

Example 6.2(d) Reaction of hG-CSF with aldehydoHES derivatives of examples 6.1(f) and 6.1(h)

To 3.3 mL of a solution of hG-CSF after buffer exchange into 0.1 M sodium acetate buffer, pH 5.0 (as described in example 6.2(c) above) 3.3 mL of a solution of 789 mg of the HES-derivative and 3.3 mL of a 60 mM solution of sodium cyanoborohydride, both in the same buffer, were added and the solution was incubated for 30 h at 4°C. All solutions were cooled to 0°C before mixing.

After 17 h samples were removed for reaction control. The reaction mixtures were analysed by gel electrophoresis (see figure 20).

Example 6.3 In vitro assay

Mitogenicity of G-CSF variants for mouse NFS-60 cells

G-CSF is known for its specific effects on the proliferation, differentiation and activation of hematopoietic cells of the neutrophilic granulocyte lineage. The mitogenic capacity of G-CSF variants was tested using mouse NFS-60 cells (N. Shirafuji et al., Exp. Hematol. 1989, 17, 116-119). Cells grown in RPMI medium with 10% fetal calf serum (Gibco INVITROGEN GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) containing 5-10% WEHI-3B (DSMZ, Braunschweig, D; cultivated as described by the DSMZ) conditioned medium as source of exogenous IL-3 were harvested by centrifugation, washed and aliquoted at 100,000 cells per well in a 24-well plate. Cells were allowed to adapt for 1 hour at 37°C in RPMI medium without WEHI-3B conditioned media before G-CSF growth factor samples diluted in the same media were added. NFS-60 cells were exposed to purified G-CSF variants (purification according to examples 3 A 1 und 2, protein quantification according to example 3 B 1):

Neupogen®, Neulasta® both from Amgen,

“HES-GCFS10/0.4 conjugate” prepared in example 6.2(b),

“HES-GCFS10/0.7 conjugate” prepared in example 6.2(b),

"HES-GCFS30/0.4 conjugate" prepared in example 6.2(d),

"HES-GCFS30/0.7 conjugate" prepared in example 6.2(d),

"HES-GCFS50/0.7 conjugate" prepared in example 6.2(b),

"Mock incubation" (= reaction control, 197mg/ml HES50/0.7, MW 47,000 D, DS 0.76,

- 5 Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach Rodheim, Germany), for 3 days at 37°C and then the cells were electronically counted (Casy TT Cell Counter, Schärfe System, Reutlingen, D).

10 The results are summarised in the table below and in Figure 21. In all cases, the amounts of protein given in the table below and Figure 21 represent the G-CSF content of the conjugates only. As can be seen in Figure 21, all of the different G-CSF variants (2.5 - 250 pg/ml) were able to stimulate an increase in the number of cells after 3 days compared to a medium that did not contain added growth factors. All variants reached the same maximum stimulation level at a concentration of 250 pg/ml.

15

Table of example 6.3 : Proliferation of mouse NFS-60 cells, induced by G-CSF variants

Concentration [pg/ml]	0	2.5	2.8	5	5.7	10	11.3	25	28.4	50	56.7	250	283.5
Neupogen	0.44	0.86		1.20		1.69		2.33		2.49		2.41	
HES-GCSF 10/0.7	0.44	0.72		0.93		1.44		2.14		2.41		2.41	
HES-GCSF 10/0.4	0.44	0.72		0.97		1.40		2.17		2.67		2.75	
HES-GCSF 50/0.7	0.44	0.62		0.70		0.97		1.68		2.15		2.32	
Mock- incubation	0.44	0.85		1.31		1.91		2.38		2.47		2.41	
HES-GCSF 30/0.4	0.44	0.82		1.21		1.62		2.28		2.50		2.60	
HES-GCSF 30/0.7	0.44	0.80		1.09		1.66		2.20		2.35		2.44	
Neulasta	0.44	0.63		0.80		1.12		1.83		2.25		2.33	

Example 6.4***in vivo* biological effects of hG-CSF conjugates in rats**

Upon arrival, the rats [male CRL:CD[®] rats (7 weeks old), Charles River Deutschland GmbH, Sanghofer Weg 7, D-97633 Sulzfeld)] were randomly sorted into groups of 5. After 7 days acclimatization, rats in poor condition were excluded and replaced by spare animals. The weight of the rats upon arrival was 181-203 g.

Each group of five randomly selected rats was then intravenously administered 100 µg protein per kg body weight (injection speed 15 sec/dosis, vehicle: 5ml PBS/kg bodyweight) of the following non-conjugated or conjugated G-CSF samples (purification according to examples 3 A 1 und 2, protein quantification according to example 3 B 1):

Neupogen[®] and Neulasta[®], both from Amgen,
"HES-GCSF10/0.4 conjugate" (10/0.4) prepared in example 6.2(b),
15 "HES-GCSF10/0.7 conjugate" (10/0.7) prepared in example 6.2(b),
"HES-GCSF30/0.4 conjugate" (30/0.4) prepared in example 6.2(d),
"HES-GCSF30/0.7 conjugate" (30/0.7) prepared in example 6.2(d),
"HES-GCSF50/0.7 conjugate" (50/0.7) prepared in example 6.2(b),
"Mock incubation" (= reaction control, 197 mg/ml HES50/0.7, MW 47,000 D, DS 0.76,
20 Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach Rodheim, Germany) and a vehicle control (PBS, application volume 5 ml/kg b.w.).

Blood samples from all animals of approx. 200 µl EDTA whole blood were taken from the retrobulbar venous plexus under light ether anaesthesia. On test day -5 blood was taken once in the morning from all animals after overnight fasting. On test days 1 to 8 blood was taken twice daily at an interval of 12 hours. The first blood sample on day 1 was taken prior to G-CSF / G-CSF-HES-conjugate administration.

White blood cell (WBC) counts were carried out using a Bayer ADVIA[™] 120 (Fernwald, Germany). The results are shown in figure 22.

Example 6.5**Measurement of *in vivo* half-life of the conjugate prepared from HES50/0.7 and G-CSF via reductive**

amination (example 6.2(b)) compared to Neupogen® and Neulasta® (Amgen)

Female mice BALB/cOlaHsd (Harlan GmbH/Borchen) were used. On the day of administration, the is weights of the animals were measured (19-22 g). 100 µg per kg body weight of the chemically modified rh-G-CSF sample as prepared in Example 6.2(b) as well as Neupogen® and Neulasta® (Amgen) samples were each injected intravenously in the tail vein of nine mice. At 1, 3, 6, 11, 22, 30, 49, 72 hours after injection (see table below), samples of approx. 150 µl whole blood were taken from the tail vein or the retrobulbar venous plexus from 3 mice of the respective group using capillaries containing sodium-heparin (Hirschmann, Eberstadt) and stored on ice until preparation of plasma.

Table of example 6.5: Conduct of the sampling procedure

Sample	Mouse nr.:	1h	3h	6h	11h	22h	30h	49h	72h
Neulasta	1	x				x		x	
	2								
	3								
	4		x				x		x
	5								
	6								
	7			x	x				
	8								
	9								
Neupogen	10	x				x		x	
	11								
	12								
	13		x				x		
	14								
	15								
	16			x	x				
	17								
	18								
HES-G-CSF	19	x				x		x	
	20								
	30								
	22		x				x		x
	23								
	24								
	25			x	x				
	26								
	27								

Whole blood was centrifuged for 10 minutes at 2000g. Plasma was transferred to another tube and recentrifuged for 5 min at 3500g. Aliquots were stored at -80°C until the day of analysis. The amount of G-CSF in the plasma samples were quantified by utilizing a
5 ELISA (R&D GmbH, Wiesbaden) method, following the instruction of the manufacturer.

The results are shown in Fig. 36 wherefrom it becomes evident that compared to Neupogen, the HES-G-CSF conjugate according to the invention has a highly increased half-life (5.1 compared to 1.2 h), and compared to Neulasta, it has a half-life which is
10 almost the same (5.1 compared to 5.2 h).

Example 7 Conjugation of a HES to recombinant hEPO by reductive amination

15

Recombinant human EPO was used, having the amino acid sequence of human EPO and essentially the same characteristics as the commercially available Erypo® (Orhto Biotech, Jansen-Cilag) or NeoRecormon® (Roche), cf. EP 0 148 605, EP 0 205 564, EP 0 411 678.

20 Example 7.1 Synthesis of amino-HES

10 g of oxidized HES (MW = 57,000 D, DS = 0.76, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D, prepared according to DE 196 28 705 A1) were heated over night at 80 °C in vacuo, dissolved under nitrogen in 53 ml dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-
25 Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 2 ml of 1,4-diaminobutane (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After stirring at 40 °C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 350 ml of ice-cold 2-propanol (Carl Roth GmbH + Co. KG, Karlsruhe, D). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, washed with 80 ml of ice-cold 2-propanol and collected by centrifugation. The crude product was
30 dissolved in 80 ml water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 85 %.

Example 7.2 Synthesis of aldehydo-HES

153 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 241 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 51 ml N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 170 µL N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21 °C for 30 min, 5.1 g of amino-HES, prepared according to example 7.1, were added. After shaking for 16 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 360 ml of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, re-dissolved in 50 ml water and precipitated with 360 ml of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v) as described above. After centrifugation, the precipitate was dissolved in 50 ml water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 87 %.

Example 7.3 Conjugation of aldehydo-HES to EPO by reductive amination

625 mg aldehydo-HES, prepared according to example 7.2, were dissolved to 1.67 ml in reaction buffer (0.1 M sodium acetate buffer pH 5.0) and cooled to 0 °C. 1.67 ml of the EPO solution (3mg/ml) and 1.67 ml of a 60 mM sodium cyanoborohydride solution, both in the same buffer and cooled to 0 °C, were added and the mixture was incubated at 0 °C. After 17 h, the reaction mixture was purified after analysis by gel electrophoresis (see Fig. 23, Lane B).

Example 7.4 Reaction control A: Reaction of aldehydo-HES with EPO without sodium cyanoborohydride

313 mg aldehydo-HES, prepared according to example 7.2, were dissolved to 0.83 ml in reaction buffer (0.1 M sodium acetate buffer pH 5.0) and cooled to 0 °C. 0.83 ml of the EPO solution (3 mg/ml) in the same buffer and 0.83 ml of reaction buffer, both cooled to 0 °C, were added and the mixture was incubated at 0 °C. After 17 h, the reaction mixture was purified after analysis by gel electrophoresis (see Fig. 23, Lane C).

Example 7.5 Reaction control B: Reaction of EPO with sodium cyanoborohydride

0.83 ml of the EPO solution (3 mg/ml) in reaction buffer (0.1 M sodium acetate buffer pH 5.0) were cooled to 0 °C, 0.83 ml of a 60 mM sodium cyanoborohydride solution in the same buffer and 0.83 ml of reaction buffer, both cooled to 0 °C, were added and the mixture was incubated at 0 °C. After 17 h, the reaction mixture was purified after analysis by gel electrophoresis (see Fig. 23, Lane D).

10 Example 7.6 Ion exchange chromatography for the purification of EPO and EPO derivatives

The purification of EPO samples was performed at room temperature using an ÄKTA explorer 10 system (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech) consisting of a pump P-903, a Mixer M-925, with 0.6 ml chamber, a Monitor UV-900, with 10 mm flow cell, a Monitor pH/C-900, a fraction Collector Frac-900, a sample loop 2 ml along with the Unicorn software Version 3.2.1.. The column containing 5 ml Q-Sepharose Fast Flow was equilibrated with 10 CV of buffer A (20mM N-morpholino-propane sulfonic acid/NaOH buffer , pH 8.0). The EPO samples were diluted 1:10 with buffer A (and finally adjusted to pH 7.8-8.2 and were applied by using the sample pump at a flow rate of 1 ml/min. Following washing of the sample pump with 10 ml of buffer A, the column was further washed with 6 CV of buffer A at a flow rate of 1.0 ml/min. Subsequently a 4 volumes of 20mM Na-Phosphat, pH 6,5; buffer B at aflow rate of 0.8 ml/min and EPO was eluted using a steep gradient from 0- 40% buffer C (0.5M NaCl in 20mM Na-Phosphat, pH 6,5) within 37 min. Elution profiles were recorded at 206, 260 and 280 nm absorbance . After completion of elution, the column was regenerated by 25 ml of buffer C at a flow rate of 1 ml/min. Finally the column was run with 1M NaOH for 60 min and reconditioned with buffer C and stored until further use.

30 Example 7.7 EPO protein determination

Quantitative determination of EPO protein was performed by measuring UV absorption at 280 nm according to the Eur. Phar. (European Pharmacopeia 4, Monography 01/2002: 1316: erythropoietin concentrated solution) in a cuvette with 1 cm path length. In addition, EPO was quantitated by applying a RP-HPLC method using a RP-C4 column (Vydac

Protein C4, Cat.# 214TP5410, Grace Vydac, Ca, US); the HPLC method was calibrated using the erythropoietin BRP 1 reference standard (European Pharmacopeia, Conseil de l'Europe B.P. 907-F67029, Strasbourg Cedex 1).

5 **Example 7.8 In-vivo assay of the biological activity of HES-modified EPO**

The EPO-bioassay in the normocythaemic mouse system was performed according to the procedures described in the European Pharmacopeia 4, Monography 01/2002:1316: Erythropoietin concentrated solution and Ph. Eur. Chapter 5.3 : "Statistical Analysis of Results of Biological Assays and Tests"; For the HES-modified EPO according to example 7.3 a value for the specific activity of 418 500 units per mg EPO of protein was measured indicating an approximately 4-5 fold higher specific activity when compared to the EPO starting material.

15 The results of the study are summarized in the following Table.

Table of example 7.8:

Sample description	Calculated specific activity of EPO sample (based on A280 and RP-HPLC determination)
EPO starting material (not modified)	89 000 U/mg
EPO starting material (Reaction control A)	88 500 U/mg
EPO HES according to example 7.3	418 500 U/mg

20 **Example 8 Synthesis of HES-IFN-alpha conjugates via reductive amination**

The IFN- α used was a recombinant human Interferon alpha-2b manufactured by recombinant DNA technology using Escherichia coli (E. coli). It is composed of 165

amino acids and presents an amino acid sequence which is identical to the natural human interferon alpha 2b (hIFN-alpha 2b).

5 **Example 8.1 Synthesis of oxo-HES**

HES oxidised at its reducing end as described hereinunder (oxo-HES) was prepared from HES using an alkaline iodine solution as described in DE 196 28 705 A1 the respective contents of which (example A, column 9, lines 6 to 24) is incorporated herein by reference.

10

Example 8.2 Synthesis of HES derivatives

In a two step procedure, oxo-HES of example 8.1 was modified at its reducing end with an amine, and an aldehydo group was introduced in a second reaction. The resulting aldehydo-
15 HES was used to produce the IFN-alpha-HES conjugates via reductive amination as described in example 8.3.

Example 8.2.1 Synthesis of amino-HES from oxo-HES of example 8.1

20 5.12 g of oxo-HES of example 8.1 (MW = 14.5 kD, DS = 0.41, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D) were heated over night at 80 °C in vacuo and dissolved under nitrogen in 25 mL dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 5.13 mL of 1,4-diaminobutane were added. After stirring at 40 °C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 150 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of
25 acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, washed with 40 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v) and collected by centrifugation. The crude product was dissolved in 80 mL water, dialysed for 4 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 67 %.

30

Example 8.2.2 Synthesis of aldehydo-HES from amino-HES of example 8.2.1

105 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 135 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 7 mL N,N-

dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 135 μ L N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, 0.7 g of amino-HES (synthesised as described in example 8.2.1) were added. After shaking for 18 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 42 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4°C, re-dissolved in 5 mL DMF and precipitated with 42 mL ethanol/ acetone as described above. After centrifugation, the collected precipitate was dissolved with water, dialysed for 4 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 95 %.

Example 8.2.3 Synthesis of amino-HES from oxo-HES of example 8.1

6.02 g of oxo-HES of example 8.1 (MW = 14.7 kD, DS = 0.76, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D) were heated over night at 80 °C in vacuo and dissolved under nitrogen in 32 mL dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 6.03 mL of 1,4-diaminobutane were added. After stirring at 40 °C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 150 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, washed with 40 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v) and collected by centrifugation. The crude product was dissolved in 80 mL water, dialysed for 4 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 52 %.

Example 8.2.4 Synthesis of aldehydo-HES from amino-HES of example 8.2.3

150 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 230 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 10 mL N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 204 μ L N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, 1 g of amino-HES (synthesised as described in example 8.2.3) were added. After shaking for 19 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 84 mL of ice-cold 2-propanol. The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, re-dissolved in 50 mL water, dialysed for 2 d against

water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 83 %.

Example 8.2.5 Synthesis of amino-HES from oxo-HES of example 8.1

5 g of oxo-HES of example 8.1 (MW = 28 kD, DS = 0.41, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D) were heated over night at 80 °C in vacuo and were then dissolved under nitrogen in 28 mL dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 1.67 mL of 1,4-diaminobutane were added. After stirring at 40 °C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 175 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C. The crude product was dissolved in 40 mL water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was not determined.

Example 8.2.6 Synthesis of aldehydo-HES from amino-HES of example 8.2.5

130 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 153 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 36 mL N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 110 µL N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, 2.61 g of amino-HES (synthesised as described in example 8.2.5) were added. After shaking for 22.5 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 160 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C and washed with an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). After centrifugation, the precipitate was dissolved in 30 mL water, dialysed for 1 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 81 %.

Example 8.2.7 Synthesis of amino-HES from oxo-HES of example 8.1

5 g of oxo-HES of example 8.1 (MW = 30.8 kD, DS = 0.76, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D) were heated over night at 80 °C in vacuo and were then

dissolved under nitrogen in 28 mL dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 1.67 mL of 1,4-diaminobutane were added. After stirring at 40 °C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 175 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C.

5 The crude product was dissolved in 40 mL water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was not determined.

Example 8.2.8 Synthesis of aldehydo-HES from amino-HES of example 8.2.7

10

122 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 144 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 34 mL N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 103 µL N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, 2.46 g of amino-HES (synthesised as described in example 8.2.7) were added. After shaking for 22.5 h at 22°C, the reaction mixture was added to 160 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C and washed with an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). After centrifugation, the precipitate was dissolved in 30 mL water, dialysed for 4 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 87 %.

15

20

Example 8.2.9 Synthesis of amino-HES from oxo-HES of example 8.1

25

10 g of oxo-HES (MW = 42.1 kD, DS = 0.41, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D) were heated for two days at 80 °C in vacuo and were then dissolved under nitrogen in 53 mL dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 2.01 mL of 1,4-diaminobutane were added. After stirring at 40 °C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 350 mL of ice-cold 2-propanol (Carl Roth GmbH + Co. KG, Karlsruhe, D). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, washed with 80 mL of ice-cold 2-propanol and collected by centrifugation. The crude product was dissolved in 80 mL water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis

30

tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 76 %.

Example 8.2.10 Synthesis of aldehydo-HES from amino-HES of example 8.2.9

5

900 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 1053 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 30 mL N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 930 µL N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, 3 g of amino-HES (synthesised as described in example 8.2.9 and dissolved in 20 mL N,N-dimethylformamide) were added. After shaking for 22.5 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 210 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C and washed with an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). After centrifugation, the precipitate was dissolved in 30 mL water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 97 %.

10

15

Example 8.2.11 Synthesis of amino-HES from oxo-HES of example 8.1 (A)

20

6.09 g of oxo-HES (MW = 56.8 kD, DS = 0.76, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D) were heated over night at 80 °C in vacuo and were then dissolved under nitrogen in 32 mL dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 1.22 mL of 1,4-diaminobutane were added. After stirring at 40 °C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 150 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, washed with 40 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v) and collected by centrifugation. The crude product was dissolved in 80 mL water, dialysed for 4 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 82 %.

25

30

Example 8.2.12 Synthesis of aldehydo-HES from amino-HES of example 8.2.11

125 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 174 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 38 mL N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 155 µL N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, 3.8 g of amino-HES (synthesised as described in example 8.2.11) were added. After shaking for 19 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 160 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, re-dissolved in 20 mL N,N-dimethylformamide and precipitated with 80 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v) as described above. After centrifugation, the precipitate was dissolved in 50 mL water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 77 %.

Example 8.2.13 Synthesis of amino-HES from oxo-HES of example 8.1 (B)

10 g of oxo-HES (MW = 56.8 kD, DS = 0.76, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D) were heated over night at 80°C in vacuo and were then dissolved under nitrogen in 53 mL dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 2 mL of 1,4-diaminobutane were added. After stirring at 40 °C for 17 h the reaction mixture was added to 350 mL of ice-cold 2-propanol (Carl Roth GmbH + Co. KG, Karlsruhe, D). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, washed with 80 mL of ice-cold 2-propanol and collected by centrifugation. The crude product was dissolved in 80 mL water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 85 %.

Example 8.2.14 Synthesis of aldehydo-HES from amino-HES of example 8.2.13

153 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 241 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 51 mL N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 170 µL N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, 5.1 g of amino-HES (synthesised as

described in example 8.2.13) were added. After shaking for 16 h at 22 °C, the reaction mixture was added to 360 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4 °C, re-dissolved in 50 mL water and precipitated with 360 mL of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture of acetone and ethanol (v/v) as described above. After centrifugation, the precipitate was dissolved in 50 mL water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 3.5 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 87 %.

Example 8.2.15 Synthesis of amino-HES from oxo-HES of example 8.1

5.0 g of oxo-HES (MW = 29.3 kD, DS = 0.86, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D) were heated over night at 80°C in vacuo, dissolved under nitrogen in 20 ml dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 1,67 ml of 1,4-diaminobutane (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After stirring at 40°C for 30.5 h the reaction mixture was added to 175 ml of ice-cold 1:1 (v/v) mixture of acetone (Carl Roth GmbH + Co. KG, Karlsruhe, D) and ethanol (Sonnenberg, DAB, Braunschweig, D). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation for 120 min at 4°C, dissolved in 40 ml water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 10 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 87 %.

Example 8.2.16 Synthesis of aldehydo-HES from amino-HES of example 8.2.15

150 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 230 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 10 ml N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 166 µL N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, a solution of 3.02 g AminoHES (synthesized as described in example 8.2.15) in 20 ml DMF were added. After shaking for 16 h at 22°C, the reaction mixture was added to 215 ml of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture (v/v) of acetone (Carl Roth GmbH + Co. KG, Karlsruhe, D) and ethanol (Sonnenberg, DAB, Braunschweig, D). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4°C, re-dissolved in 20 ml water and precipitated with acetone/ ethanol as described above. After centrifugation, the precipitate was dissolved in 30 ml water, dialysed for 2.5 d against

water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 10 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 87 %.

Example 8.2.17 Synthesis of amino-HES from oxo-HES of example 8.1

5 5.0 g of oxo-HES (MW = 97.9 kD, DS = 0.76, Supramol Parenteral Colloids GmbH, Rosbach-Rodheim, D) were heated over night at 80°C in vacuo, dissolved under nitrogen in 20 ml dry dimethyl sulphoxide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) and 0.50 ml of 1,4-diaminobutane (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After stirring at 40°C for 30.5 h the reaction mixture was added to 175 ml of ice-cold 1:1 (v/v) mixture of acetone (Carl Roth GmbH + Co. KG, Karlsruhe, D) and ethanol (Sonnenberg, DAB, Braunschweig, D). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation for 120 min at 4°C, dissolved in 40 ml water, dialysed for 2 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 10 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 90 %.

Example 8.2.18 Synthesis of aldehydo-HES from amino-HES of example 8.2.17

20 73 mg 4-formylbenzoic acid and 112 mg 1-hydroxy-1H-benzotriazole (both Aldrich, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were dissolved in 10 ml N,N-dimethylformamide (Peptide synthesis grade, Biosolve, Valkenswaard, NL) and 81.3 µL N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (Fluka, Sigma-Aldrich Chemie GmbH, Taufkirchen, D) were added. After incubation at 21°C for 30 min, a solution of 3.09 g AminoHES (prepared as described in example 8.2.17) in 20 ml DMF were added. After shaking for 16 h at 22°C, the reaction mixture was added to 215 ml of an ice-cold 1:1 mixture (v/v) of acetone (Carl Roth GmbH + Co. KG, Karlsruhe, D) and ethanol (Sonnenberg, DAB, Braunschweig, D). The precipitated product was collected by centrifugation at 4°C, re-dissolved in 20 ml water and precipitated with acetone/ ethanol as described above. After centrifugation, the precipitate was dissolved in 30 ml water, dialysed for 2.5 d against water (SnakeSkin dialysis tubing, 10 kD cut off, Perbio Sciences Deutschland GmbH, Bonn, D) and lyophilized. The yield of isolated product was 96 %.

Example 8.3 Synthesis IFN-alpha conjugates via reductive amination

Example 8.3.1 Conjugation to IFN-alpha at a 20 µg scale

To 0.675 mg IFN-alpha, dissolved in 0.375 ml of 25 mM sodium phosphate buffer pH 7.5, containing 150 mM NaCl and 0.3 mM EDTA, were added 4 ml of the reaction buffer (0.1 M sodium acetate buffer pH 5.0) and the solution was centrifuged for 30 min at 3939 x g in a Vivaspin 6 concentrator (Viva Science, 5 kD MWCO, Hannover, Germany). The washing procedure was repeated twice by dilution of the residual solution with the reaction buffer to 6 ml and centrifugation as described. The volume of the final IFN-alpha solution was 0.236 ml, corresponding to a calculated final concentration of 2.86 mg/ml IFN-alpha. The protein concentration was not checked experimentally.

To 7 µl of the IFN-alpha solution prepared as described above and cooled to 0°C, 10 µl (50 equiv.) of the respective aldehydo-HES (see table below) solution and 11.3 µl of a 60 mM sodium cyanoborohydride solution, both in the same buffer (sodium acetate, pH 5.0) and cooled to 0°C, were added and the mixture was incubated for 17 h at 0°C. The reaction mixture was analysed by gel electrophoresis. The following concentrations of the aldehydo-HES solutions were employed:

Table of example 8.3.1

Entry	HES-Derivative	Concentration [mg/ml]
A	aldehydo-HES (example 8.2.2)	52
B	aldehydo-HES (example 8.2.4)	52
C	aldehydo-HES (example 8.2.6)	156
D	aldehydo-HES (example 8.2.8)	156
E	aldehydo-HES (example 8.2.10)	260
F	aldehydo-HES (A) (example 8.2.12)	260
G	Without HES derivative but with NaCNBH ₃	-
I	Without HES derivative and without NaCNBH ₃	-
J	non-oxidized HES10/0.4 (Mw 7.6 kD; DS = 0.41) with NaCNBH ₃	52
K	non-oxidized HES10/0.4 (Mw 7.6 kD; DS = 0.41), without NaCNBH ₃	52

SDS-Page analysis of the conjugates is shown in Fig. 24.

Example 8.3.2 Conjugation to IFN-alpha at a 3 mg scale

- 5 To 20 mg IFN-alpha, dissolved in 25 mM sodium phosphate buffer pH 7.5, containing 150 mM NaCl and 0.3 mM EDTA, were added 8 ml of the reaction buffer (0.1 M sodium acetate buffer pH 5.0) and the solution was centrifuged for 99 min at 3939 x g in a Vivaspin 15R concentrator (Viva Science, 5 kD MWCO, Hannover, Germany). The washing procedure was repeated twice by dilution of the residual solution with the reaction
- 10 buffer to 18 ml and centrifugation as described. The final IFN-alpha solution was diluted with reaction buffer to 6.66 ml giving a final calculated concentration of 3 mg/ml IFN-alpha. The protein concentration was not checked experimentally.

- To 1 ml of the IFN-alpha solution prepared as described above and cooled to 0 °C, 1 ml of
- 15 the aldehydoHES solution (75 equiv.) and 1 ml of a 60 mM sodium cyanoborohydride solution, both in the same buffer (sodium acetate, pH 5.0) and cooled to 0 °C, were added and the mixture was incubated for 22 h at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was purified after analysis by gel electrophoresis. For the reaction described in entry G, only 0.666 µl of the corresponding solutions were used. The following concentrations of the aldehydoHES
- 20 solutions were employed:

Table of example 8.3.2

Entry	HES-Derivative	Concentration [mg/ml]
A	aldehydo-HES (example 8.2.2)	117
B	aldehydo-HES (example 8.2.4)	117
C	aldehydo-HES (example 8.2.6)	350
D	aldehydo-HES (example 8.2.8)	350
E	aldehydo-HES (example 8.2.10)	584
F	aldehydo-HES (A) (example 8.2.12)	584
G	non-oxidized HES10/0.4 (Mw 7.6 kD; DS 0.41)	117

SDS-Page analysis of the conjugates is shown in Fig. 25.

25

Example 8.3.3 Conjugation to IFN-alpha at a 3 mg scale

8.3.3.1 Conjugation of AldehydoHES as prepared in example 8.2.16 to IFN α by reductive amination

5 To 10 mg IFN α , dissolved in 25 mM sodium phosphate buffer pH 7.5, containing 150 mM NaCl and 0.3 mM EDTA, were added 8 ml of the reaction buffer (0.1 M sodium acetate buffer pH 5.0) and the solution was centrifuged for 30 min at 3939 x g in a Vivaspin 15R concentrator (Viva Science, 5 kD MWCO, Hannover, Germany). The washing procedure was repeated twice by dilution of the residual solution with the reaction buffer to 18 ml and
10 centrifugation as described. The final IFN α solution was diluted with reaction buffer to 3.33 ml giving a final calculated concentration of 3 mg/ml IFN α . The protein concentration was not checked experimentally.

To 1 ml of the IFN α solution prepared as described above and cooled to 0°C, 1 ml of the
15 aldehydoHES solution as prepared in example 8.2.16 (75 equiv., 352 mg/ml) and 1 ml of a 60 mM sodium cyanoborohydride solution, both in the same buffer and cooled to 0°C, were added and the mixture was incubated for 22 h at 0°C. The reaction mixture was purified after analysis by gel electrophoresis. For gel electrophoresis an XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply
20 (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12 % Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction.

8.3.3.2 Conjugation of AldehydoHES as prepared in example 8.2.18 to IFN α by reductive amination
25

To 1 ml of the IFN α solution prepared as described in 8.3.3.1 and cooled to 0°C, 2 ml of the aldehydoHES solution as prepared in example 8.2.18 (75 equiv., 369 mg/ml) and 1.5 ml of a 60 mM sodium cyanoborohydride solution, both in the same buffer and cooled to
30 0°C, were added and the mixture was incubated for 22 h at 0°C. The reaction mixture was purified after analysis by gel electrophoresis. For gel electrophoresis a XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12 % Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS

SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction.

8.3.3.3 Reaction control: Conjugation of HES10/0.4 (Mw 7.6 kD DS = 0.41) to IFN α by reductive amination

To 1 ml of the IFN α solution prepared as described in 8.3.3.1 and cooled to 0°C, 1 ml of the HES10/0.4 solution (75 equiv., 117 mg/ml) and 1 ml of a 60 mM sodium cyanoborohydride solution, both in the same buffer and cooled to 0°C, were added and the mixture was incubated for 22 h at 0°C. The reaction mixture was purified after analysis by gel electrophoresis. For gel electrophoresis an XCell Sure Lock Mini Cell (Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) and a Consort E143 power supply (CONSORTnv, Turnhout, B) were employed. A 12 % Bis-Tris gel together with a MOPS SDS running buffer at reducing conditions (both Invitrogen GmbH, Karlsruhe, D) were used according to the manufactures instruction.

SDS-Page analysis of the conjugates is shown in Fig. 26.

Example 8.3.4 Conjugation to IFN-alpha at a 16 mg scale

The buffer of 20 mg IFN-alpha solution was exchanged as described in example 8.3.2. The final IFN-alpha solution was diluted with reaction buffer to 6.37 ml giving a final calculated concentration of 3.14 mg/ml IFN-alpha. 100 μ l of this solution were diluted with 900 μ l reaction buffer and the protein concentration was determined spectrophotometrically at 279 nm to 3.01 mg/ml, based on the molar extinction coefficient of 18000. After combination with the material used for protein concentration determination the final volume was 7.0 ml with a protein concentration of 2.74 mg/ml.

To 5.91 ml of this IFN-alpha solution (16.2 mg) prepared as described above and cooled to 0 °C, a solution of 3.152 g of aldehydo-HES of example 8.2.14 (75 equiv.) in 5 ml reaction buffer and 6 ml of a 60 mM sodium cyanoborohydride solution, both in the same buffer (sodium acetate, pH 5.0) and cooled to 0 °C, were added and the mixture was incubated for 22 h at 0 °C (see Fig. 27, Line A).

As a reaction control, 1.09 ml of the pre-cooled IFN-alpha solution (3 mg) were mixed with 1 ml of a solution of 122 mg non-oxidized HES10/0.4 (Mw 7.6 kD DS = 0.41) in the reaction buffer and 1 ml of a 60 mM sodium cyanoborohydride solution, both in the same buffer and cooled to 0 °C (see Fig. 27, line B).

5

SDS-Page analysis of the conjugate is shown in Fig. 27.

Example 8.4 Purification of the IFN-alpha -HES conjugates

10

8.4.1 Purification of HES-IFN- α from incubations of the reductively aminated protein with activated HES derivatives (separation of the modified and unmodified protein from HES-derivatives)

15

The purification of all samples was performed at room temperature using an ÄKTA explorer 10 equipment. The column containing 3 ml Q-Sepharose Fast Flow was equilibrated with 10 CV of buffer A (20 mM Tris/HCl, pH 8.0). The samples were diluted 1:10 with buffer A and were applied by using the sample pump at a flow rate of 1 ml/min. Following washing of the sample pump with 10 ml of buffer A, the column was further washed with 6 CV of buffer A at a flow rate of 1.0 ml/min. Elution was performed by using a linear gradient from 0-100% of buffer B (0.3 M NaCl in 20 mM Tris/HCl, pH 8.0) over 2 CV and an isocratic run with 0.5 CV of buffer B at a flow rate of 0.8 ml/min. The column was regenerated by using 2 CV of buffer C (1.5 M NaCl in 20 mM Tris/HCl, pH 8.0) followed by 0.5 CV of buffer B at a flow rate of 0.8 ml/min. Reequilibration for the next run was performed by using 6 CV of buffer A and a flow rate of 1.0 ml/min.

20

25

8.4.2 Materials and Methods

Equipment: ÄKTA explorer 10 (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech), with:
Pump P-903
Mixer M-925, with 0.6 ml chamber
Monitor UV-900, with 10 mm flow cell
Monitor pH/C-900
Pump P-950 (sample pump)

30

Software Unicorn Version 3.21

Column: Amersham Biosciences C 10/10
 Column material: Q-Sepharose Fast Flow, Code no. 17-0510-01, Lot no. OD 06453
 5 Column volume: 3 ml

Buffer A: 20 mM Tris/HCl, pH 8.0, Lot-Nr. PL0746
 Buffer B: 0.3 M NaCl in 20 mM Tris/HCl, pH 8.0, Lot-Nr. PL0747
 Buffer C: 1.5 M NaCl in 20 mM Tris/HCl, pH 8.0, Lot-Nr. PL0748

10

Method

Volume	Step	Buffer	Flow rate
1 CV	Equilibration	100% buffer A	1.0 ml/min
15 5-28 ml	Load sample	sample 1:10 in buffer A	1.0 ml/min
10 ml	Wash sample pump	100% buffer A	1.0 ml/min
5 CV	Wash out unbound sample	100% buffer A	1.0 ml/min
	Start Fractionation	100% buffer A	1.0 ml/min
6 CV	Elution, linear gradient	0-100% buffer B	0.8 ml/min
20 2 CV	Elution, isocratic	100 % buffer B	0.8 ml/min
2 CV	Regeneration	100% buffer C	0.8 ml/min
0.5 CV	Regeneration	100% buffer B	0.8 ml/min
	Stop Fractionation	100% buffer B	0.8 ml/min
5 CV	Reequilibration	100% buffer A	1.0 ml/min

25

Detection: 280 nm, 260 nm, 220 nm
 pH
 Conductivity

Fractionation: 1 ml fractions

30

8.4.3 Results

8.4.3.1 Sample according to example 8

sample composition: 1 mg EP2001 (rhIFN-a2b) in 25 mM Na-phosphate, 0.13 M NaCl and 0.3 mM EDTA, pH 7.5 ± 0.2

starting volume: 0.5 ml, diluted 1:10 in buffer A = 5 ml

flow-through/wash 9.3 ml

5 run date: 2004-09-29

run no.: QS24 D39 (see Table for example 8.4.4.1)

8.4.3.2 Sample according to example 8.3.2 (Entry A)

10 sample composition: 2.5 mg EP2001 + 97.5 mg AldehydoHES10/0.4 (NZA256) in 0.1 M Na-acetate, 20 mM Na-cyanoborohydride, pH 5.0

starting volume: 2.5 ml, diluted 1:10 in buffer A = 25 ml

flow-through/wash: 44 ml

run date: 2004-09-29

15 run no.: QS25 D56 (see Table for example 8.4.4.1)

8.4.3.3 Sample according to example 8.3.2 (Entry B)

sample composition: 2.5 mg EP2001 + 97.5 mg AldehydoHES10/0.7 (NZA235A) in 0.1 M Na-acetate, 20 mM Na-cyanoborohydride, pH 5.0

starting volume: 2.5 ml, diluted 1:10 in buffer A = 25 ml

flow-through/wash: 41 ml

run date: 2004-09-30

run no.: QS26 D57 (see Table for example 8.4.4.1)

25

8.4.3.4 Sample according to example 8.3.2 (Entry C)

sample composition: 2.5 mg EP2001 + 292 mg AldehydoHES30/0.4 (NZA328) in 0.1 M Na-acetate, 20 mM Na-cyanoborohydride, pH 5.0

30 starting volume: 2.5 ml, diluted 1:10 in buffer A = 25 ml

flow-through/wash: 42 ml

run date: 2004-09-30

run no.: QS27 D58 (see Table for example 8.4.4.1)

8.4.3.5 Sample according to example 8.3.2 (Entry D)

sample composition: 2.5 mg EP2001 + 292 mg AldehydoHES30/0.7 (NZA329) in 0.1 M Na-acetate, 20 mM Na-cyanoborohydride, pH 5.0

5 starting volume: 2.5 ml, diluted 1:10 in buffer A = 25 ml
flow-through/wash: 40 ml
run date: 2004-09-30
run no.: QS28 D59 (see Table for example 8.4.4.1)

10 8.4.3.6 Sample according to example 8.3.2 (Entry E)

sample composition: 2.5 mg EP2001 + 487 mg AldehydoHES50/0.4 (NZA303) in 0.1 M Na-acetate, 20 mM Na-cyanoborohydride, pH 5.0

starting volume: 2.7 ml, diluted 1:10 in buffer A = 27 ml
15 flow-through/wash: 50 ml
run date: 2004-09-30
run no.: QS29 D60 (see Table 8.4.4.1)

8.4.3.7 Sample according to example 8.3.2 (Entry F)

20

sample composition: 2.5 mg EP2001 + 487 mg AldehydoHES50/0.7 (NZA309) in 0.1 M Na-acetate, 20 mM Na-cyanoborohydride, pH 5.0

starting volume: 2.6 ml, diluted 1:10 in buffer A = 26 ml
flow-through/wash: 50 ml
25 run date: 2004-09-30
run no.: QS30 D61 (see Table 8.4.4.1)

8.4.3.8 Sample according to example 8.3.2 (Entry G)

30 sample composition: 1.7 mg EP2001 + 98 mg HES10/0.4 (Supramol Lot. 407B) in 0.1 M Na-acetate, 20 mM Na-cyanoborohydride, pH 5.0
starting volume: 2.5 ml, diluted 1:10 in buffer A = 25 ml
flow-through/wash: 42 ml
run date: 2004-10-01

run no.: QS31 D62 (see Table for example 8.4.4.1)

8.4.4 Comparison of the results

5 8.4.4.1 SDS-PAGE Analysis of IFN-alpha elution peaks

Table 1: Comparison of the peak areas detected at 280 nm during Q-Sepharose chromatography of HESylated IFN- α (Table for example 8.4.4.1)

Run no.	Calculated applied amount of unmodified IFN- α	Eluate Area (280 nm) [mAU x ml]	Eluate Area (280 nm) / mg unmodified Protein [mAU x ml x mg ⁻¹]	Calculated yield total protein [mg] (HPLC-Quantification at 280 nm*)
QS-24 D39	1.0 mg	961	961	0.42
QS-25 D56	2.5 mg	4370	1748	1.20
QS-26 D57	2.5 mg	5669	2268	1.64
QS-27 D58	2.5 mg	3350	1340	1.60
QS-28 D59	2.5 mg	2854	1142	1.54
QS-29 D60	2.5 mg	2255	902	1.52
QS-30 D61	2.5 mg	9278	3711	3.44
QS-31 D62	1.7 mg	1918	1128	1.40

10

* data of quantitative analysis derived from RP-HPLC-3

Example 9 Description of IFN alpha antiviral activity bioassay**Description of the Test Procedure: Antiviral activity of Interferon-alpha**

5 After pre-diluting the Test Items in cell culture medium, serial two-fold dilutions were prepared. In 96 well microtiter plates, diluted Interferon was added -in four-fold replicate per dilution- to freshly trypsinized MDBK cells (40.000 cells per well). The assays were incubated for 24 hours at 37 °C (total volume per well: 150 µL (example 9.1) or 175 µL (example 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 10)).

10

Subsequently, 50 µL diluted VSV stock solution were added to each well (except for the positive control wells) resulting in a multiplicity of infection of 0.1.

The following controls were included in each assay: 12 wells that received virus plus cell
15 culture medium instead of Interferon (negative control) and 12 wells that received cell culture medium instead of Interferon and virus (positive control).

The assays were incubated for 42 hours at 37 °C.

20 At the end of the incubation period the cell culture supernatant of each well was replaced with 50 µL of a solution of MTT (at least 2 mg/mL in cell culture medium). The cells were incubated for three hours. The purple formazan dye formed by the proliferating cells was solubilized by adding 100 µL solution of isopropanol/HCl (isopropanol with 40 mM HCl) to each well. Subsequently, the absorbance values of the solutions were measured at
25 570/630 nm in a microtiter plate reader.

The proliferative activity of MDBK cells grown in the presence of Interferon and VSV was calculated for each dilution of Interferon as follows:

30

$$\frac{((\text{Mean absorbance of four Interferon treated wells}) - (\text{Mean absorbance of negative control})) * 100}{(\text{Mean absorbance of positive control}) - (\text{Mean absorbance of negative control})}$$

35

The antiviral activity of Interferon-alpha was determined in four separate assays for each

of the Test Items.

Example 9.1 Antiviral activity of Intron A relative to NIH standard

5 In all experiments, Intron A (IFN-alpha 2b, Schering-Plough), calibrated against NIH-standard rhIFN-alpha 2a (NIAID, NIH, Bethesda, USA, Gxa01-901-535) was used as an internal lab reference. The NIH-standard had a specific activity of 9,000 IU/ml. The internal lab reference Intron A had a specific activity of 8,487,000 IU/ml in the test as described in example 9.

10

Proliferative activity of Intron A compared to NIH standard rhIFN-alpha 2a is shown in Fig. 28.

Example 9.2 Antiviral activity of mock incubated IFN- α -HES relative to unmodified starting material

15

As described in example 8.3.4 mock incubated IFN-alpha-HES (described in example 8.3.2, entry G) was used as a reaction control. The antiviral activity of the material was compared to that of unmodified starting material to investigate the influence of the coupling and purification process on the bioactivity. Mock incubation did not affect the in vitro bioactivity of IFN-alpha.

20

Relative *in vitro* activity of mock incubated IFN-alpha-HES compared to unmodified IFN-alpha starting material is shown in Fig. 29.

25

Example 9.3 Antiviral activity of IFN-alpha-HES conjugates relative to Intron A

In the assay system described in example 9, the conjugates (entries A, B, C, D, E from example 8.3.2 purified according to example 8.4) were tested compared to unmodified IFN-alpha starting material, Intron A and Pegasys (Roche). The CPE50 concentration of the materials was calculated. All IFN-alpha-HES conjugates retained an antiviral activity which was substantially higher than that of Pegasys.

30

The relative *in vitro* activity of IFN-alpha-HES conjugates compared to unmodified IFN-alpha starting material, Intron A and Pegasys is shown in Fig. 30.

Example 9.4 Antiviral activity of IFN-alpha-HES conjugate compared to Intron A

In the assay system described in example 9, the IFN-alpha-HES conjugate of example 8.3.4 purified according to example 8.4 was tested compared to Intron A. The CPE50 concentration of the materials was calculated. The IFN-alpha-HES conjugate retained high antiviral activity of more than 25% compared to Intron A.

The relative *in vitro* activity of IFN-alpha-HES conjugates compared to Intron A is shown in Fig. 31.

Example 9.5 Antiviral activity of IFN-alpha-HES conjugate compared to Intron A

In the assay system described in example 9, the IFN-alpha-HES conjugates of example 8.3.3, purified according to example 8.4 was tested compared to Intron A and PegIntron. The CPE50 concentration of the materials was calculated. The IFN-alpha-HES conjugates retained an antiviral activity of approx. 25% compared to Intron A, which is on the same level as the *in vitro* activity of PegIntron.

The relative *in vitro* activity of IFN-alpha-HES conjugates compared to Intron A is shown in figure 38.

Example 10 *In vivo* bioactivity of IFN-alpha-HES conjugates (PK study in mice)

Example 10.1 Influence of mouse serum on assay system as described in example 9

Dilutions of Interferon-alpha were prepared in cell culture medium (control) and in mouse serum (1:40 dilution and 1:80 dilution). The assay was performed as described in example 9.

- 5 The antiviral activity of Interferon-alpha was determined in two separate assays for the control, for mouse serum 1:40 diluted as well as for mouse serum 1:80 diluted. The results indicated that mouse serum at 1:40 dilution and 1:80 does not affect the bioassay for antiviral activity of Interferon-alpha.

10

Example 10.2 *In vivo* study in mice (I)

15

Antiviral activity of pooled serum was tested in the antiviral assay. Serum was collected from two mice (female BALB/c mice, aged 8 weeks) at each time, which were sacrificed 2h, 4h, 12h, and 24h post i.v.-injection of 30µg/kg (based on the protein content) of IFN-alpha or the IFN-alpha-HES conjugate.

20

The serum samples were thawed and thoroughly homogenized by vortexing (and diluted). Serial two-fold dilutions were prepared in cell culture medium. A vial of Intron A (diluted) was thawed and thoroughly homogenized by vortexing. Serial two-fold dilutions were prepared in cell culture medium.

25

The EC50-dilutions in the CPE-assay were determined from dose response curves of a 1:2 dilution series as described in example 9.

30

The half life of the materials was determined compared to unmodified starting material and Pegasys. The half life was calculated from a semi-logarithmic plot of the EC50-dilution vs. time post injection.

30

Antiviral activity was detected for (i) IFN-alpha-HES (example 8.3.2, entry B of the table), (ii) IFN-alpha-HES (example 8.3.2, entry D of the table), (iii) IFN-alpha-HES (example 8.3.4) up to 24 h. As can be seen from Fig. 32, half-life increased from (i) (approx. 3 h) over (ii) (approx 5 h) to (iii) (approx. 7 h).

For unmodified IFN-alpha, the antiviral activity of serum was too low to calculate a serum half-life. In *K.R. Reddy et al. Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews 54 (2002) 571-586* a serum half-life of IFN-alpha in rats (i.v.) of 2 h was determined.

5 **Example 10.3** *In vivo* study in mice (II)

Antiviral activity of pooled serum was tested in the antiviral assay. Serum was collected from two mice (female BALB/c mice, aged 8 weeks) at each time, which were sacrificed 2h, 4h, 12h, and 24h post i.v.-injection of 30µg/kg (based on the protein content) of IFN-alpha or the IFN-alpha-HES conjugate.

The serum samples were thawed and thoroughly homogenized by vortexing (and diluted). Serial two-fold dilutions were prepared in cell culture medium. A vial of Intron A (diluted) was thawed and thoroughly homogenized by vortexing. Serial two-fold dilutions were prepared in cell culture medium.

The EC50-dilutions in the CPE-assay were determined from dose response curves of a 1:2 dilution series as described in example 9.

The half life of the materials was determined compared to unmodified starting material and Pegasys. The half life was calculated from a semi-logarithmic plot of the EC50-dilution vs. time post injection.

Antiviral activity was detected for (i) PegIntron, (ii) IFN-alpha-HES 30/0.8 (example 8.3.3.1) and (iii) IFN-alpha-HES 100/0.7 (example 8.3.3.2) up to 24 h. As can be seen from Fig. 37, half life increased from (i) (approx. 3.6 h) to (ii) and (iii) (approx. 6.5 and 6.8 h).

30 **Example 11** *In vivo* bioactivity of IFN-alpha-HES conjugates (PK study in rabbits)

Example 11.1 Radioactive labeling of IFN-alpha and IFN-alpha-HES conjugates

The samples used for the PK study were labeled with ^{125}I with the Chloramine T method. Chloramine T is reacted with iodide and an interhalogen species (I-Cl) is formed. The interhalogen reacts on the aromatic ring of Tyrosine and substitutes it in *o*-position.

5 **Example 11.2 Reference experiment: Labeling of oxo-HES 50/0.4 with ^{125}I**

In a first experimental series under the given reaction conditions it was investigated whether trace amounts of iodine could be detected e.g. by iodine, polyiodine or polyiodide forming complexes with HES. In comparison, oxo-HES (MW 42.1 kD DS = 0.41) and
10 IFN-alpha-HES (example 8.3.2, entry E of table) were labeled under the same conditions and after the purification process, radioactivity in the samples was measured. According to literature amylopectine can form complexes with iodine, polyiodine or polyiodide when the helical structures have at least 11 anhydroglucose units.

15 Only in the IFN-alpha-HES sample, radioactivity was detected. This result proved that radioactivity was exclusively caused by covalent modification of Tyrosine residues in of IFN-alpha but not by potentially physically bound iodine, which was not removed in the purification process. oxo-HES 50/0.4 (MW = 42,1 kD, DS = 0,41) can be considered as negative control. Due to the high molecular weight and the low degree of substitution in
20 this oxo-HES species, the longest helical structures would be expected if any are present and thus, in this case there would have been the highest risk of complexation of iodine.

Example 11.3 Labelling of Interferon-alpha with non-radioactive Iodine („cold iodination“)

25

Interferon alpha was labeled with non-radioactive iodine in the same labelling and purification process as the IFN-alpha-HES-conjugates 50/0.4. In the antiviral assay antiviral activity was retained. However, no quantification was performed, because in the labelling and purification process the concentration was changed and could not be
30 determined due to the small amount of material available.

Example 11.4 Radioactive labeling of IFN-alpha-HES conjugates

Samples were labeled according to example 11.1 with radioactive ^{125}I . The samples were IFN-alpha starting material, IFN-alpha-HES (example 8.3.2, entry D of table). The samples had a specific activity of 38 $\mu\text{Ci}/\mu\text{g}$ (IFN-alpha starting material), 41 $\mu\text{Ci}/\mu\text{g}$ (IFN-alpha-HES 30/0.7).

5

Example 11.5 *In vivo* PK study in rabbits

Example 11.5.1 Experimental procedure

10 The test items were used as a dilution. A solution of 4 $\mu\text{Ci}/\text{ml}$ was prepared. Dilution buffer was PBS.

Four New Zealand White Rabbits HsdIf:NZW. Source Harlan Winkelmann GmbH, D-33178 Borcheln., Sex: female; body weight at the commencement of the study: > 2.5 kg.

15 All animals have been applicated intravenously with the radiolabelled test substances, receiving a volume of 1 ml/kg body weight, which is equivalent to a dosage of 4 $\mu\text{Ci}/\text{kg}$ body weight. Blood samples have been taken at defined time points. At each sampling point approx. 600 μl blood from the auricular vein of the animals was taken for further investigations.

20

For the blood sampling an intravenous indwelling catheter was layed under general anaesthesia (Ketamin/Rompun) into the auricular vein. Anaesthesia rested for the blood sampling point before application, for the application itself and the first three blood samplings after application (0.5 hours, 1 hour, and 2 hours). Catheters were let into animals
25 for the further sampling points until they were excised by the animals themselves. Further blood samplings were determined with a cannula through different areas of the auricular veins.

Further processing of the blood samples was performed after blood sampling. To
30 determine the radiolabelled test item in the blood, the collected blood samples were processed according to a specific solubilization protocol. For this 250 μl of the blood samples were transferred to a new vial and an equal volume of SolvableTM was added. The samples were incubated for one hour at 50 °C in a shaking water bath. After the incubation time the samples were cooled to room temperature and 100 μl of EDTA-solution [100

mM] was added. Subsequent 300 µl of H₂O₂ [30 %] was added and after shaking again the samples were incubated for one hour at 50 °C in a shaking water bath. Before further processing the samples were collected.

5 At the end of blood collecting and solubilization the samples were transferred to a 20 ml scintillation vial and 10 ml of the scintillation cocktail Ultima GoldTM was added. Until measurement of the isotope ¹²⁵I in a scintillation-counter (about 72 h after cocktail addition) the samples were stored in the dark at 2-8 °C.

10 Prior to the processing and statistical analysis of the data the quench of the activity detection under the specific experimental conditions was determined. The regression coefficient ($r^2 = 0.9970$) is a measure of the fit to the line. The quench factor [pCi/cpm] was found to be 3.315938.

15 Results (see Fig. 33):

IFN-alpha-HES showed a distinct prolongation of half-life compared to the starting material. Beyond 24 h (approx. < 1000 pCi/ml) the curve of the unmodified material leveled off and almost no decrease of activity was observed. The small standard deviation of the measured radioactivity for all samples proves the quality of the experiment.

20

The half-life was calculated from the concentration of IFN-alpha in the blood samples. For the evaluation shown in Fig. 34, only the data from blood samples taken between 4 and 24 h were considered. For the unmodified material a half-life of 7 h was calculated. With IFN-alpha-HES, a substantial increase of half-life was observed (approx. 33 h).

25

Data were evaluated statistically according to different compartment models as shown in the diagrams in Fig. 35 a, and b (cut-out 0-12 h). In the one-compartment model, it is obvious, that the concentration of IFN-alpha rapidly drops during the first 2 hours after injection. For IFN-alpha-HES the half-life is clearly prolonged. Statistically calculated half-life was 0.26 h for IFN-alpha, 7.7 h for IFN-alpha-HES. According to the non-compartment model the statistical evaluation results in a half-life of 147 h for unmodified IFN-alpha (based on data 24-120 h), 42.7 h for IFN-alpha-HES (based on data 36-120 h). As described above the half-life of the unmodified IFN-alpha is substantially prolonged since the curve levels off beyond 24 h.

30

The half life of the two samples is summarized in the following table, based on the described models for the calculation.

5

Table of example 11.5.1:

Half-life of IFN-alpha and IFN-alpha-HES calculated according to different models

	IFN-alpha starting material	IFN-alpha-HES
	$t_{1/2}$	$t_{1/2}$
non compartment model	(147.0*)	42.7**
one compartment model	0.26	7.7
semi logarithmic plot (see fig.33, 4-24 h)	7	33

* evaluated data 24-120 h, ** evaluated data 36-120 h

Claims

5

1. A method for preparing a conjugate comprising a protein and a polymer, wherein the polymer is a hydroxyalkyl starch, said method comprising
 - (a)(1) introducing at least one aldehyde group in the polymer by a ring-opening oxidation reaction, or
 - 10 (a)(2) reacting the polymer with an at least bifunctional compound, said compound comprising two functional groups M and Q, one functional group M being reacted with the polymer and one functional group Q being
 - (i) an aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group; or
 - (ii) being a functional group being chemically modified to give the aldehyde or keto or hemiacetal functionalized polymer derivative; and
 - 15 (b) covalently linking the at least one aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group of the polymer or a derivative thereof, to at least one amino group of the protein by reductive amination.
- 20 2. The method as claimed in claim 1 wherein the hydroxyalkyl starch is hydroxyethyl starch.
3. The method as claimed in claim 2 wherein the hydroxyethyl starch has a molecular weight of from 2 to 200 kD, preferably of from 4 to 130 kD, more preferably of from
25 4 to 70 kD.
4. The method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 3, wherein the reductive amination is carried out in an aqueous medium.
- 30 5. The method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 4, wherein the reductive amination is carried out in the presence of NaCNBH_3 .
6. The method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 5, wherein the reductive amination is carried out at a pH of 7.5, preferably 7 or less.

7. The method as claimed in claim 6, wherein the pH is 6 or less.
8. The method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 7, wherein the reductive amination is carried out at a temperature of from 0 to 25 °C.
9. The method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 8, wherein in (a)(1), the polymer is subjected to a ring-opening oxidation reaction using a periodate to give a polymer derivative having at least one aldehyde group.
10. The method as claimed in claim 9, wherein the ring-opening oxidation reaction is carried out in an aqueous medium.
11. The conjugate as claimed in claim 9 or 10, wherein the ring-opening oxidation reaction is carried out at a temperature of from 0 to 5 °C.
12. The method as claimed in any of claims 9 to 11, wherein the polymer is employed with its reducing end in the non-oxidized form.
13. The method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 8, wherein in (a)(2)(i), the functional group M is a carboxy group or a reactive carboxy group and the functional group Q is an aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group.
14. The method as claimed in claim 13, wherein the bifunctional compound comprising M and Q is selected from the group consisting of formylbenzoic acid, 4-formylbenzoic acid pentafluorophenyl ester, 4-formylbenzoic acid N-hydroxysuccinimide ester, and 4-(4-formyl-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)butyric acid.
15. The method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 8, wherein in (a)(2)(ii), the functional group M is an amino group and the functional group Q is an amino group.
16. The method as claimed in claim 15, wherein the compound comprising two amino groups M and Q is an optionally substituted diaminoalkane having from 2 to 20 carbon atoms.

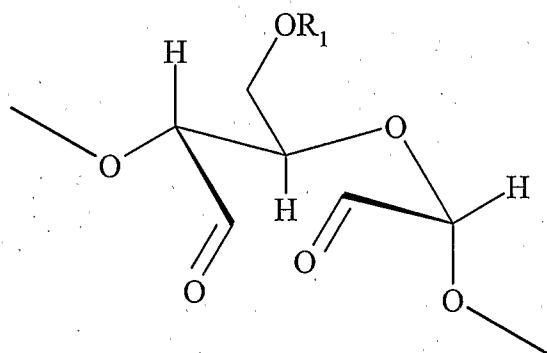
17. The method as claimed in claim 16, wherein the diaminoalkane is selected from the group consisting of 1,2-diaminoethane, 1,3-diaminopropane, and 1,4-diaminobutane.
- 5 18. The method as claimed in any of claim 15 to 17, additionally comprising reacting the polymer derivative, resulting from the reaction of the polymer with the at least bifunctional compound comprising two amino groups M and Q, at the amino group Q with a further bifunctional compound comprising a carboxy group or a reactive carboxy group and an aldehyde group or a keto group or a hemiacetal to give a
10 polymer derivative having an aldehyde group or a keto group or a hemiacetal.
19. The method as claimed in claim 18, wherein the further bifunctional compound is selected from the group consisting of formylbenzoic acid, 4-formylbenzoic acid pentafluorophenyl ester, 4-formylbenzoic acid N-hydroxysuccinimide ester, and 4-
15 (4-formyl-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)butyric acid.
20. The method as claimed in claim 15, wherein the amino group Q of the compound comprising two amino groups M and Q, is a beta hydroxy amino group.
- 20 21. The method as claimed in claim 20, wherein the beta hydroxyamino group is oxidized to give an aldehyde group.
22. The method as claimed in claim 20 or 21, wherein the compound comprising two amino groups M and Q, Q being a beta hydroxy amino group, is 1,3-diamino-2-
25 hydroxypropane.
23. The method as claimed in claim 21 or 22, wherein the oxidation reaction is carried out using a periodate.
- 30 24. The method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 23, wherein the protein is selected from the group consisting of EPO, G-CSF, IFN alpha, IFN beta, AT III, IL-2, IL-3, myoglobin, SOD, and BSA, preferably from the group consisting of rhEPO, rhG-CSF, rhIFN alpha, rhIFN beta, rhAT III, rhIL-2, rhIL-3, myoglobin, SOD, and BSA,

or from the group consisting of A1AT, factor VII, factor VIII, factor IX, tPA, and APC.

25. A conjugate comprising a protein and a polymer, as obtainable by a method as defined in any of claims 1 to 24.

26. The conjugate as claimed in claim 25, wherein the polymer or derivative thereof is predominantly coupled to the N-terminal amino group of the protein via an azomethine and/or amino linkage, the protein used for the reaction comprising the N-terminal amino group and at least one further amino group, preferably a further lysine group.

27. The conjugate as claimed in any of claim 25 or 26, wherein the employed polymer comprising at least one aldehyde group introduced in the polymer by a ring-opening oxidation reaction, comprises at least one structure according to formula



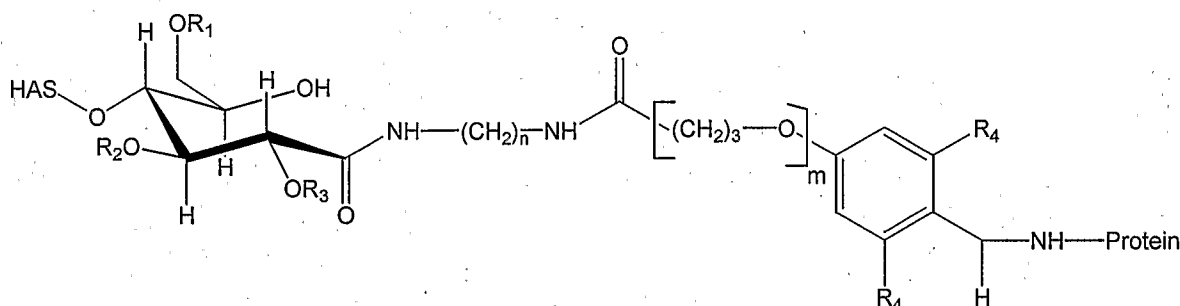
wherein R_1 is hydrogen or a hydroxyalkyl group, a hydroxyaryl group, a hydroxyaralkyl group or a hydroxyalkaryl group having of from 2 to 10 carbon atoms.

28. The conjugate as claimed in claim 25 or 26, wherein the protein is covalently linked to the polymer derivative via an azomethine and/or amino linkage, said derivative resulting from the reaction of the polymer with the compound comprising two amino groups M and Q via functional group M, the resulting compound having been further reacted via Q with a further bifunctional compound comprising a carboxy group or a reactive carboxy group and an aldehyde group or a keto group or a hemiacetal group, said carboxy group or reactive carboxy group forming an amide linkage with the

amino group Q, and said aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group having been reacted with an amino group of the protein by reductive amination.

29. The conjugate as claimed in claim 28, wherein the further bifunctional compound comprising a carboxy group or a reactive carboxy group and an aldehyde group or keto group or hemiacetal group is selected from the group consisting of formylbenzoic acid, 4-formylbenzoic acid pentafluorophenyl ester, 4-formylbenzoic acid N-hydroxysuccinimide ester, and 4-(4-formyl-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)butyric acid.

30. The conjugate as claimed in claim 29, having the structure

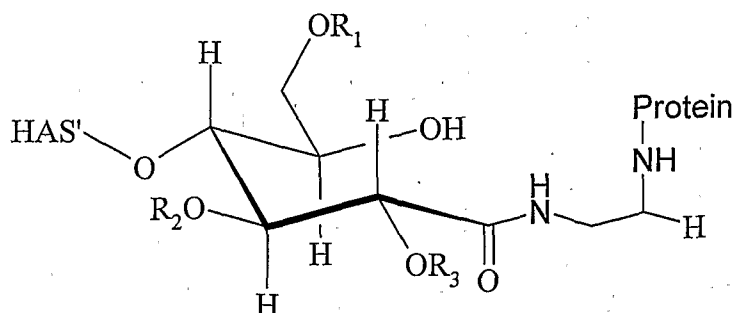


in case the polymer was reacted via its oxidized reducing end, R_1 , R_2 and R_3 being independently hydrogen or a hydroxyalkyl group, and $n = 2, 3$, or 4 , R_4 being independently hydrogen or a methoxy group, and $m = 0$ in case R_4 is hydrogen and $m = 1$ in case R_4 is methoxy.

31. The conjugate as claimed in claim 25 or 26, wherein the protein is covalently linked to the polymer derivative via an azomethine and/or amino linkage, said derivative resulting from the reaction of the polymer with the compound comprising two amino groups M and Q, Q being a beta hydroxy amino group, and oxidation of the beta hydroxyamino group Q to give an aldehyde group.

32. The conjugate as claimed in claim 31, wherein the compound comprising two amino groups M and Q, Q being a beta hydroxy amino group, is 1,3-diamino-2-hydroxypropane.

33. The conjugate as claimed in claim 32, having the structure



in case the polymer was reacted with its oxidized reducing end, R_1 , R_2 and R_3 being independently hydrogen or a hydroxyalkyl group.

34. The conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 33, wherein the protein is selected from the group consisting of EPO, G-CSF, IFN alpha, IFN beta, AT III, IL-2, IL-3, myoglobin, SOD, and BSA.
35. The conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 33, wherein the protein is selected from the group consisting of rhEPO, rhG-CSF, rhIFN alpha, rhIFN beta, rhAT III, rhIL-2, rhIL-3, myoglobin, SOD, and BSA.
36. The conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 33, wherein the protein is selected from the group consisting of A1AT, factor VII, factor VIII, factor IX, tPA, and APC.
37. A conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 36 or 49 to 58, or a conjugate, as obtainable by a method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 24, for use in a method for the treatment of the human or animal body.
38. A pharmaceutical composition comprising in a therapeutically effective amount a conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 36 or 49 to 58, or a conjugate, as obtainable by a method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 24.
39. The pharmaceutical composition as claimed in claim 38, further comprising at least one pharmaceutically acceptable diluent, adjuvant, or carrier.
40. Use of a conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 36 or 49 to 58, or a conjugate, as obtainable by a method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 24, wherein the protein is

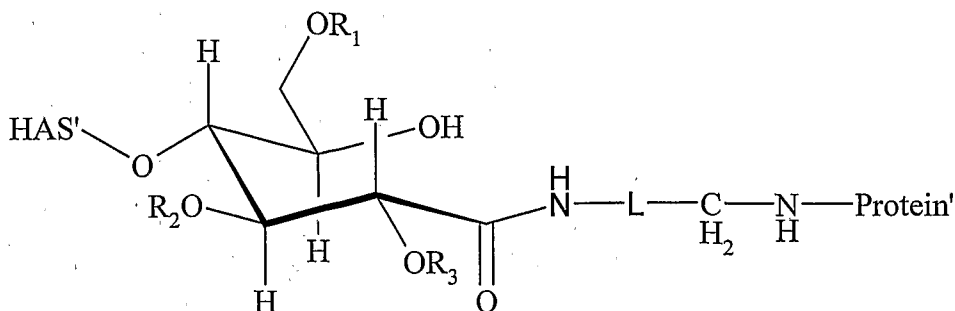
EPO and the polymer is HAS, preferably HES, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of anemic disorders or hematopoietic dysfunction disorders or diseases related thereto.

- 5 41. Use of a conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 36 or 49 to 58, or a conjugate, as obtainable by a method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 24, wherein the protein is G-CSF and the polymer is HAS, preferably HES, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of a disorder characterized by a reduced hematopoietic or immune function, said disorder preferably being a result of chemotherapy, radiation therapy, infectious disease, severe chronic neutropenia, or leukemia.
- 10 42. Use of a conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 36 or 49 to 58, or a conjugate, as obtainable by a method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 24, wherein the protein is AT III and the polymer is HAS, preferably HES, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of hereditary deficiency, veno-occlusive disease, burns and heparin resistance in coronary arterial bypass Graft (CABG) surgery, prevention of micro-clot formation associated with ventilation therapy, treatment of bowel perforation resulting from trauma or gastrointestinal surgery; disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) and/or sepsis.
- 15 43. Use of a conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 36 or 49 to 58, or a conjugate, as obtainable by a method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 24, wherein the protein is Factor VIII and the polymer is HAS, preferably HES, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of haemophilia A.
- 20 44. Use of a conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 36 or 49 to 58, or a conjugate, as obtainable by a method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 24, wherein the protein is A1AT and the polymer is HAS, preferably HES, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of emphysema, cystic fibrosis, atopic dermatitis, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) and/or bronchitis.
- 25 45. Use of a conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 36 or 49 to 58, or a conjugate, as obtainable by a method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 24, wherein the protein is tPA and the polymer is HAS, preferably HES, for the preparation of a medicament
- 30

for the treatment of myocardial infarctions (heart attacks), thrombosis, thromboembolism or occlusive diseases, especially occlusive arterial diseases.

- 5 46. Use of a conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 36 or 49 to 58, or a conjugate, as obtainable by a method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 24, wherein the protein is APC and the polymer is HAS, preferably HES, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of severe sepsis, thrombosis, thromboembolism or occlusive diseases, especially occlusive arterial diseases.
- 10 47. Use of a conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 36 or 49 to 58, or a conjugate, as obtainable by a method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 24, wherein the protein is IFN alpha and the polymer is HAS, preferably HES, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of leukaemia e.g. hairy cell leukaemia, chronic myelogeneous leukaemia, multiple myeloma, follicular lymphoma, cancer, e.g. 15 carcinoid tumour, malignant melanoma and hepatitis, eg. chronic hepatitis B and chronic hepatitis C.
- 20 48. Use of a conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 36 or 49 to 54, or a conjugate, as obtainable by a method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 24, wherein the protein is IFN beta and the polymer is HAS, preferably HES, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of multiple sclerosis, preferably relapsing forms of multiple sclerosis.
- 25 49. A conjugate comprising hydroxyalkyl starch and a protein, wherein hydroxyalkyl starch is coupled with its oxidized reducing end via an amide linkage to a first crosslinking compound, said crosslinking compound being additionally linked via an amide linkage to a second crosslinking compound, said second crosslinking compound being linked via an azomethine and/or amino linkage to a protein, wherein the first crosslinking compound was preferably employed as an diamino 30 functionalized compound and the second crosslinking compound was preferably employed as a carboxy and aldehyde or keto or hemiacetal, more preferably as a carboxy and aldehyde functionalized compound.

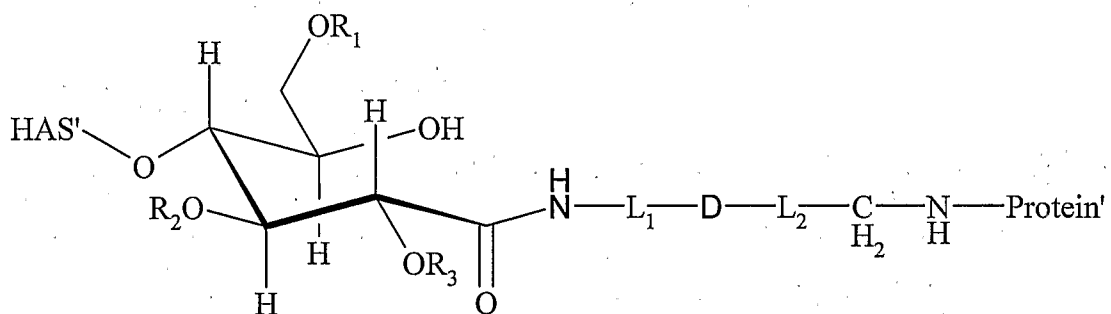
50. A conjugate, comprising a protein and a polymer or a derivative thereof, wherein the polymer is a hydroxyalkyl starch (HAS), having a structure according to the formula



wherein R_1 , R_2 and R_3 are independently hydrogen or a hydroxyalkyl group, a hydroxyaryl group, a hydroxyaralkyl group or a hydroxyalkaryl group having of from 1, preferably from 2 to 10 carbon atoms, preferably hydrogen or a hydroxyalkyl group, more preferably hydrogen or a hydroxyethyl group, and

wherein L is an optionally substituted, linear, branched and/or cyclic hydrocarbon residue, optionally comprising at least one heteroatom, having from 1 to 60 preferably from 1 to 40, more preferably from 1 to 20, more preferably from 1 to 10, more preferably from 1 to 6 more preferably from 1 to 2 carbon atoms and especially preferably 1 carbon atom, L being in particular CH_2 .

51. A conjugate, comprising a protein and a polymer or a derivative thereof, wherein the polymer is a hydroxyalkyl starch (HAS), having a structure according to the formula



wherein R_1 , R_2 and R_3 are independently hydrogen or a hydroxyalkyl group, a hydroxyaryl group, a hydroxyaralkyl group or a hydroxyalkaryl group having of from 1, preferably from 2 to 10 carbon atoms, preferably hydrogen or a hydroxyalkyl group, more preferably hydrogen or a hydroxyethyl group, and

wherein L_1 and L_2 are independently an optionally substituted, linear, branched and/or cyclic hydrocarbon residue, optionally comprising at least one heteroatom, comprising an alkyl, aryl, aralkyl heteroalkyl, and/or heteroaralkyl moiety, said

residue having from 1 to 60 preferably from 1 to 40, more preferably from 1 to 20, more preferably from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, and
 wherein D is a linkage, preferably a covalent linkage which was formed by a suitable functional group F₂ linked to L₁ and a suitable functional group F₃ linked to L₂.

5

52. The conjugate as claimed in claim 51, wherein L₁ is -(CH₂)_n- with n = 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, preferably 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, more preferably 2, 3, 4, and especially preferably 4.

10

53. The conjugate as claimed in claim 51 or 52, wherein L₂ comprises an optionally suitably substituted aryl moiety, preferably an aryl moiety containing 6 carbon atoms, L₂ being especially preferably C₆H₄.

54. The conjugate as claimed in any of claims 51 to 53, wherein F₂ is selected from the group consisting of

15

- C-C-double bonds or C-C-triple bonds or aromatic C-C-bonds;
- the thio group or the hydroxy groups;
- alkyl sulfonic acid hydrazide, aryl sulfonic acid hydrazide;
- 1,2-dioles;

20

- 1,2 amino-thioalcohols;

- azides;

- 1,2-aminoalcohols;

- the amino group -NH₂ or derivatives of the amino groups comprising the structure unit -NH- such as aminoalkyl groups, aminoaryl group, aminoaralkyl groups, or alkyaminogroups;

25

- the hydroxylamino group -O-NH₂, or derivatives of the hydroxylamino group comprising the structure unit -O-NH-, such as hydroxylalkylamino groups, hydroxylaryl amino groups, hydroxylaralkylamino groups, or hydroxalalkylamino groups;

30

- alkoxyamino groups, aryloxyamino groups, aralkyloxyamino groups, or alkaryloxyamino groups, each comprising the structure unit -NH-O-;

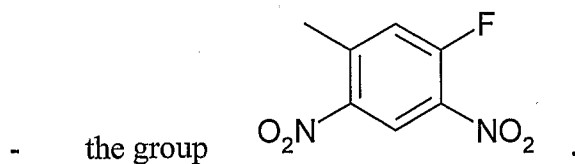
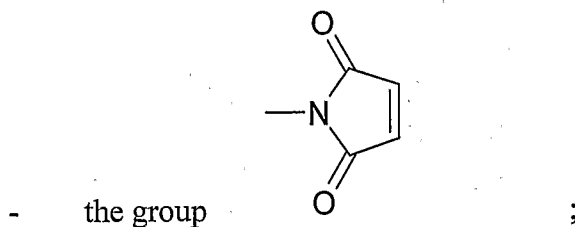
- residues having a carbonyl group, -Q-C(=G)-M, wherein G is O or S, and M is, for example,

- -OH or -SH;

- an alkoxy group, an aryloxy group, an aralkyloxy group, or an alkaryloxy group;
- an alkylthio group, an arylthio group, an aralkylthio group, or an alkarylthio group;
- 5 -- an alkylcarbonyloxy group, an arylcarbonyloxy group, an aralkylcarbonyloxy group, an alkarylcarbonyloxy group;
- activated esters such as esters of hydroxylamines having imid structure such as N-hydroxysuccinimide or having a structure unit O-N where N is part of a heteroaryl compound or, with G = O and Q absent, such as
- 10 aryloxy compounds with a substituted aryl residue such as pentafluorophenyl, paranitrophenyl or trichlorophenyl;

wherein Q is absent or NH or a heteroatom such as S or O;

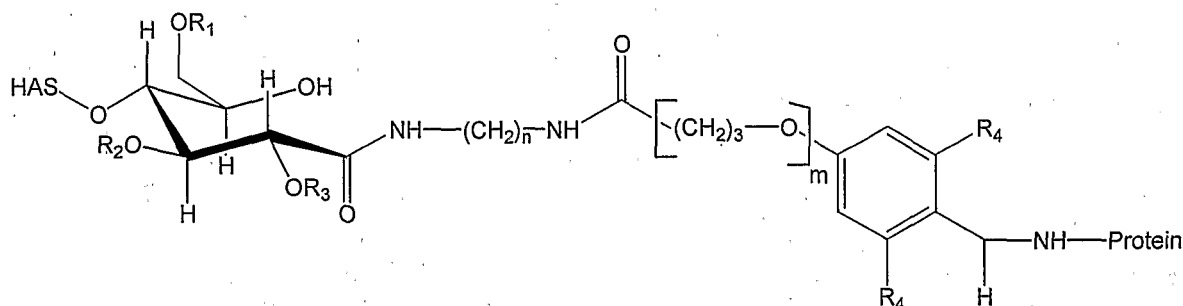
- -NH-NH₂, or -NH-NH-;
- -NO₂;
- 15 - the nitril group;
- carbonyl groups such as the aldehyde group or the keto group;
- the carboxy group;
- the -N=C=O group or the -N=C=S group;
- vinyl halide groups such as the vinyl iodide or the vinyl bromide group or
- 20 triflate;
- -C≡C-H;
- -(C=NH₂Cl)-OAlkyl
- groups -(C=O)-CH₂-Hal wherein Hal is Cl, Br, or I;
- -CH=CH-SO₂-;
- 25 - a disulfide group comprising the structure -S-S-;



and wherein F₃ is a functional group capable of forming a chemical linkage with F₂ and is preferably selected from the above-mentioned group, F₂ preferably comprising

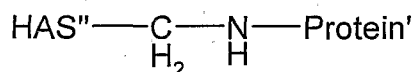
the moiety -NH-, more preferably comprising an amino group, F₃ preferably comprising the moiety -(C=G)-, more preferably -(C=O)-, more preferably the moiety -(C=G)-G-, still more preferably -(C=O)-G-, and especially preferably -(C=O)-O, D being particularly preferably an amide linkage.

55. The conjugate as claimed in claim 54, having a structure according to the formula



$n = 2, 3, \text{ or } 4$, R_4 being independently hydrogen or a methoxy group, and $m = 0$ in case R_4 is hydrogen and $m = 1$ in case R_4 is methoxy.

56. A conjugate, comprising a protein and a polymer or a derivative thereof, wherein the polymer is a hydroxyalkyl starch (HAS), having a structure according to the formula



wherein the carbon atom of the moiety -CH₂-NH- is derived from an aldehyde group which was introduced in the polymer by a ring-opening oxidation reaction, and wherein the nitrogen atom is derived from an amino group of the protein.

57. The conjugate as claimed in any of claims 54 to 71, wherein the hydroxyalkyl starch is hydroxyethyl starch.

58. The conjugate as claimed in claim 57 wherein the hydroxyethyl starch has a molecular weight of from 2 to 200 kD, preferably of from 4 to 130 kD, more preferably of from 4 to 70 kD.

59. The conjugate as claimed in any of claims 49 to 58, wherein the protein is selected from the group consisting of EPO, G-CSF, IFN alpha, IFN beta, AT III, IL-2, IL-3, myoglobin, SOD, and BSA, preferably from the group consisting of rhEPO, rhG-CSF, rhIFN alpha, rhIFN beta, rhAT III, rhIL-2, rhIL-3, myoglobin, SOD, and BSA,

and/or from the group consisting of A1AT, factor VII, factor VIII, factor IX, tPA, and APC.

- 5 60. Use of a conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 36 or 49 to 58, or a conjugate, as obtainable by a method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 24, wherein the protein is Factor VII and the polymer is HAS, preferably HES, for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of episodes in hemophilia A or B patients with inhibitors to Factor VIII or Factor IX.
- 10 61. Use of a conjugate as claimed in any of claims 25 to 36 or 49 to 58, or a conjugate, as obtainable by a method as claimed in any of claims 1 to 24, wherein the protein is Factor IX and the polymer is HAS, preferably HES, for the preparation of a medicament for the control and prevention of hemorrhagic episodes in patients with hemophillia B, preferably congenital factor IX deficiency or Christmas disease,
- 15 including control and prevention of bleeding in surgical settings.